

Handling Instructions: For MOD Use Only

Army Code No. 72061



The Rifles Drill Manual



Copyright & Handling Instructions

The information contained within this publication is British Crown Copyright and the intellectual property rights belong exclusively to the Ministry of Defence (MOD). Material and information contained in this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system and transmitted for MOD use only.

Security

This OFFICIAL document is issued for the information of such persons who need to know its contents in the course of their duties. Any person finding this document should hand it to a British Forces unit or to a police station for its safe return to the Ministry of Defence, Def Sy, Main Building, Whitehall, LONDON SW1A 2HB with particulars of how it was found. The unauthorised retention or destruction of this document may be an offence under the Official Secrets Acts 1911 – 89 or other legislation.

This information is released by the United Kingdom Government to international organisations and national governments for defence purposes only. The information must be afforded the same degree of protection as that afforded to information of an equivalent classification originated by the recipient organisation or nation, or as required by the recipient organisation or nation's security regulations. The information may only be disclosed within the Defence Departments of the recipient organisation or nation, except as otherwise authorised by the UK MOD. This information may be subject to privately owned rights.

Status

This publication has been produced under the direction and authority of the Chief of the General Staff by Director Land Warfare in his capacity as sponsor of Army Doctrine. The contents constitute mandatory regulations or an MOD Approved Code of Practice (ACOP) and provide clear military information concerning the most up to date experience and best practice available for commanders and troops to use for operations and training. If you are prosecuted for a breach of health and safety law and it is proved that you have not followed the relevant provisions of the ACOP, a court may find you criminally liable unless you can show that you have complied with the requirements of health and safety legislation, since it is a breach of this legislation which renders a person criminally liable. Breaches or omissions could result in disciplinary action under the provisions of the Armed Forces Act. It is the individual's responsibility to ensure that he or she is using the latest version of this publication. If in doubt the individual should contact Combat Publications.

Amendments

Amdt No	Date	Amdt No	Date	Amdt No	Date

DISTRIBUTION

(See page v)

FOR THE ATTENTION OF ALL SCALE HOLDERS

Units requiring an increase or decrease to their scale should apply to Army Publications, Army Media & Comm, c/o Army Headquarters, Zone 2, IDL 25, 2nd Floor Blenheim Bldg, Marlborough Lines, ANDOVER, SP11 8HT who will arrange for a revised distribution. Any request to exceed the scale must be supported by a written justification which is to be referred by Army Publications to CD Combat for approval.

The Rifles Drill Manual

Prepared under the direction
of the Chief of the General Staff

Ministry of Defence

January 2017

Crown Copyright Reserved

2017

Handling Instructions: For MOD Use Only



“SWIFT & BOLD”

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The Rifles Regimental Headquarters would wish to record our thanks to the following for their support to the creation of The Rifles Drill Manual; WO1(Comd SM) P Hyde MC, WO1 G Paton, WO2 S Lansdowne, BMaj S Topp, BMaj Lewis, CSjt C Sharp and LCpl S Yaseen.

We also wish to thank the Army School of Ceremonial for their valued contributions and Support.

We are indebted to Infantry Publications Mrs Wendy Shutler and WO1 R Owen.

Acknowledgement is also made to CSjt R Grims for the photography.

FOREWORD

1. Drill has been the foundation of battle discipline in all armies for hundreds of years. Once the element of discipline has been installed through drill on the parade square it develops naturally into various forms of battle drill.

2. RIFLES Drill descends from the 'Light Drill' used by a number of the Antecedent Regiments of The Rifles. It was taught in its original form to the skirmishers and sharpshooters of the 18th Century. These men were taught to act independently, with speed, skill, daring and valour. While other units carried their weapons on the shoulder, Riflemen carried their weapons at 'The Trail', ready for immediate use. RIFLES drill movement start and finish from the position of 'At Ease', signifying that Riflemen are constantly alert and ready for action. Bayonets are known as swords and are never fixed, except on operations. There is no exaggerated bending of the knee or shooting the foot forward. The feet are not raised more than 6 – 8 inches off the ground. The command **"STAND READY!"**, when troops are standing easy, is the command to stand properly At Ease. The command **"ATTENTION!"** is never used. At Ease and the word **"PLATOON/BATTALION!"**, etc., is the order to come to attention. Timings for The Rifles are: *Double Time*: 180 paces to the minute, *Quick Time*: 140 paces to the minute and *Slow Time*: 65 paces to the minute. Whilst the execution of Arms and Foot Drill, etc., may differ from other regiments, according to RIFLES custom the completed movement is the same in all cases.

3. The Bugle Horn is also of special significance to The Rifles because it emerged from the light troops of the British Army in North America and Europe who used new tactics over greater distances, making the drum inadequate as a means of communication. The Bugle Horn, easily carried and penetrating in sound, was the ideal replacement and by 1800 "field sounds" were used across all of the Light Companies. The Regiment's connection to the bugle continues today, not only as our cap badge, but also within our bands and daily battalion life.

4. The battalions of The Rifles share the same proud traditions and have fought alongside each other from their formation on 1 February 2007. Individually and in combination the battalions will continue to evolve RIFLES drill with the traditions of the past and the needs of the future taken into consideration. This pamphlet is therefore the authority for RIFLES Drill; that is to be taught to all Riflemen under training and used thereafter, together with The Bands and Bugles of The Rifles.

5. Any queries relating to RIFLES Drill should be addressed to The Rifles Command Sergeant Major, Headquarters Infantry, Waterloo Lines, WARMINSTER, BA12 0DJ (01985 222477 or 94381 2477).

DISTRIBUTION

(Also see notes on page vi)

RIFLES Regular Battalions.....	10 copies
RIFLES Reserve Battalions.....	10 copies
RIFLES Trg Company ITC(C).....	20 copies
All Arms The Drill Wing.....	10 copies
Royal Military Academy, Sandhurst	10 copies

Handling Instructions: For MOD Use Only

CONTENTS

Acknowledgements	v
Foreword	vi
Distribution	vii
Contents	ix
Illustrations	xii
Definitions	xv
Introduction	xvii

CHAPTER 1. NOTES FOR DRILL INSTRUCTORS

Section 1. General	1-1
Section 2. The Word Of Command	1-3
Section 3. Aids To Drill	1-5
Section 4. The Sequence Of Instruction	1-7
Section 5. Compliments	1-12
Section 6. Teaching Drill - Sequence	1-15
Section 7. Notes For Inspecting Officers	1-16

CHAPTER 2. FOOT DRILL AT THE HALT, MARCHING AND DRILL IN LINE

Introduction	2-1
Lesson 1. Positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy at the Halt	2-2
Lesson 2. Dressing in Three Ranks	2-9
Lesson 3. Open Order at the Halt — Front Rank and Close Order at the Halt — Rear Rank	2-13
Lesson 4. Close Order at the Halt — Front Rank and Open Order at the Halt — Rear Rank	2-17
Lesson 5. Turnings at the Halt, Left and Right Turns	2-20
Lesson 6. Turnings at the Halt — About Turn	2-25
Lesson 7. Inclining to the Right and Left at the Halt	2-29
Lesson 8. Saluting to the Front at the Halt	2-32
Lesson 9. Saluting to the Right and Left Flank on the March	2-38
Lesson 10. Dismissing and Falling Out	2-44
Lesson 11. The Side Pace	2-47
Lesson 12. Marching and Halting in Quick Time	2-53
Lesson 13. Turnings to the Right and Left Flank in Quick Time and Inclining	2-62
Lesson 14. The About Turn in Quick Time	2-67
Lesson 15. The Change Step in Quick Time	2-72
Lesson 16. Marking Time in Quick Time at the Halt — Halting from Marking Time in Quick Time	2-76
Lesson 17. Marking Time in Quick Time — Forward from Marking Time in Quick Time	2-78

Lesson 18.	Changing Step Whilst Marking Time at the Halt in Quick Time	2-81
Lesson 19.	Marching and Halting in Double Time	2-83
Lesson 20.	Breaking into Quick Time from the Double Time and Double Time from the Quick Time	2-87
Lesson 21.	Marching and Halting in Slow Time	2-89
Lesson 22.	Turnings to the Right and Left Flank in Slow Time	2-94
Lesson 23.	The About Turn in Slow Time	2-98
Lesson 24.	Change Step in Slow Time on the March	2-103
Lesson 25.	Marking Time and Halting from Marking Time in Slow Time at the Halt	2-107
Lesson 26.	Marking Time in Slow Time and Forward from Marking Time in Slow Time	2-109
Lesson 27.	Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time	2-111
Lesson 28.	Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time	2-114

CHAPTER 3. RIFLE EXERCISES

Introduction	3-1
Lesson 1.	Positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy with the Rifle at the Shoulder	3-3
Lesson 2.	The Change Arms at the Shoulder	3-10
Lesson 3.	The Present Arms from the Shoulder	3-17
Lesson 4.	The Shoulder Arms from the Present	3-24
Lesson 5.	The Ground Arms from the Shoulder	3-28
Lesson 6.	The Take Up Arms from the Ground Arms	3-35
Lesson 7.	Saluting to the Front at the Halt	3-39
Lesson 8.	Moving to the Trail on the March	3-43
Lesson 9.	Halting from the Trail on the March.....	3-48

CHAPTER 4. RIFLES SWORD DRILL

Lesson 1.	Draw Swords	4-4
Lesson 2.	Return Swords	4-9
Lesson 3.	Shoulder Swords, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy and the Salute at the Halt	4-13
Lesson 4.	Saluting on the March in Slow and Quick Time	4-19

CHAPTER 5. RIFLES CANE DRILL

Lesson 1.	Position of Attention and Stand at Ease	5-1
Lesson 2.	Marching and Dismissing.....	5-5
Lesson 3.	Halting.....	5-10

CHAPTER 6. FUNERAL PLANNING AND PROCEDURES, RIFLE EXERCISES AND SWORD DRILLS

Part 1.	Planning and Procedures	6-1
Part 2.	Funeral Rifle Exercises.....	6-24
Lesson 1.	The Reverse Arms from the Shoulder	6-24
Lesson 2.	The Shoulder Arms from the Reverse	6-30
Lesson 3.	The Change Arms at the Reverse	6-34
Lesson 4.	Lower on your Arms Reversed from the Present Arms.....	6-39
Lesson 5.	The Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reversed .	6-46
Lesson 6.	Volleys with Blank Cartridges	6-50
Part 3.	Funeral Sword Drill	6-63
Lesson 1.	The Reverse Swords from the Carry	6-63
Lesson 2.	The Carry Swords from the Reverse	6-67
Lesson 3.	The Change Swords at the Reverse.....	6-69
Lesson 4.	The Lower On Your Swords Reversed from the Present.....	6-74
Lesson 5.	The Present from the Lower on your Swords Reversed.....	6-77

CHAPTER 7. DRILL FOR BUGLE MAJORS AND BUGLE PLATOONS

Lesson 1.	Positions at the Halt and on the March.....	7-1
Lesson 2.	Tipping and Flourishing.....	7-8
Lesson 3.	Saluting.....	7-12
Lesson 4.	Marching at the Double and At Ease in Quick Time	7-15
Lesson 5.	Bugle Majors Drill.....	7-17
Lesson 6.	Bugle Major Cane Drill.....	7-19

ILLUSTRATIONS

Fig 2-1.	Position of Attention.....	2-5
Fig 2-2.	Stand at Ease.....	2-6
Fig 2-3.	Stand Easy.....	2-7
Fig 2-4.	Right Dress — Front View.....	2-12
Fig 2-5.	Left Turn at the Halt.....	2-23
Fig 2-6.	Right Turn at the Halt.....	2-24
Fig 2-7.	About Turn at the Halt.....	2-28
Fig 2-8.	Saluting to the Front at the Halt.....	2-35
Fig 2-9.	Saluting to the Right Flank.....	2-36
Fig 2-10.	Saluting to the Left Flank.....	2-36
Fig 2-11.	Marching in Quick Time.....	2-58
Fig 2-12.	Halting in Quick Time.....	2-58
Fig 2-13.	Right Turn in Quick Time.....	2-66
Fig 2-14.	About Turn in Quick Time.....	2-71
Fig 2-15.	Change Step in Quick Time.....	2-75
Fig 2-16.	Marching in Double Time.....	2-86
Fig 2-17.	Marching in Slow Time - Left Foot.....	2-93
Fig 2-18.	Right Turn in Slow Time.....	2-97
Fig 2-19.	Change Step in Slow Time.....	2-106
Fig 3-1.	Position of Attention at the Shoulder.....	3-7
Fig 3-2.	Stand at Ease.....	3-8
Fig 3-3.	Stand Easy.....	3-9
Fig 3-4.	Change Arms.....	3-15
Fig 3-5.	Change Arms.....	3-16
Fig 3-6.	Present Arms.....	3-21
Fig 3-7.	Present Arms — Squad Three.....	3-22
Fig 3-8.	Present Arms - Final Position.....	3-23
Fig 3-9.	Shoulder Arms from the Present.....	3-27
Fig 3-10.	Ground Arms from the Shoulder.....	3-32
Fig 3-11.	Ground Arms from the Shoulder.....	3-33
Fig 3-12.	Ground Arms — Final Position.....	3-34
Fig 3-13.	Salute to the Right.....	3-42
Fig 3-14.	Marching and Halting from the Trail.....	3-52
Fig 4-1.	Position of Attention — Slung Sword.....	4-3
Fig 4-2.	Draw Swords.....	4-7
Fig 4-3.	Draw Swords — Three.....	4-8
Fig 4-4.	Return Swords.....	4-12
Fig 4-5.	Slope Swords.....	4-17
Fig 4-6.	Stand Easy — Slung Sword.....	4-18
Fig 4-7.	Salute to the Front — Second Movement.....	4-18
Fig 4-8.	Salute to the Left or Right — The Flourish.....	4-23
Fig 4-9.	Salute to the Left or Right.....	4-24
Fig 5-1.	Position of Attention.....	5-3
Fig 5-2.	Stand at Ease.....	5-4

Handling Instructions: For MOD Use Only

Fig 5-3.	Quick March	5-8
Fig 5-4.	Quick March — Third Position.....	5-9
Fig 5-5.	The Halt.....	5-12
Fig 5-6.	Salute at the Halt.....	5-13
Fig 6-1.	Dressing the Coffin.....	6-9
Fig 6-2.	Prepare to Lift.....	6-10
Fig 6-3.	Raise - Final Position	6-11
Fig 6-4.	Outwards.....	6-12
Fig 6-5.	Turn	6-13
Fig 6-6.	Turn	6-14
Fig 6-7.	Support Poles and Straps over the Grave.....	6-17
Fig 6-8.	Lower to the Supports	6-18
Fig 6-9.	Prepare to Lift — Lift	6-23
Fig 6-10.	Lowering the Coffin	6-24
Fig 6-11a.	Reverse Arms.....	6-28
Fig 6-11b.	Reverse Arms.....	6-29
Fig 6-11c.	Reverse Arms.....	6-30
Fig 6-12.	Change Arms.....	6-37
Fig 6-13.	Change Arms — Final Position	6-38
Fig 6-14.	Lower on Your Arms Reversed — One	6-43
Fig 6-15.	Lower on Your Arms Reversed — Squad Two — Mid Movement	6-44
Fig 6-16.	Lower on Your Arms Reversed.....	6-45
Fig 6-17.	Present Arms from Lower on Your Arms Reversed	6-49
Fig 6-18.	Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Squad Three.....	6-53
Fig 6-19.	Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Present.....	6-54
Fig 6-20.	Reverse Swords from the Carry	6-66
Fig 6-21.	Change Swords at the Reverse	6-72
Fig 6-22.	Change Swords at the Reverse — Final Position	6-73
Figs 6-23.-	6-25. Reserved.....	6-80
Fig 7-1.	Stand Easy	7-2
Fig 7-2.	Stand at Ease.....	7-3
Fig 7-3.	Position of Attention.....	7-4
Fig 7-4.	Rest Position	7-5
Fig 7-5.	Ready or Playing Position	7-6
Fig 7-6.	Tipping and Flourishing - 1st and 2nd Positions.....	7-9
Fig 7-6.	Tipping and Flourishing - 3rd and 4th Positions	7-10
Fig 7-6.	Tipping and Flourishing - 5th and 6th Positions	7-10
Fig 7-6.	Tipping and Flourishing - 7th Position	7-11
Fig 7-7.	Officer on Parade	7-13
Fig 7-8.	Marching in Double Time.....	7-16
Fig 7-9.	Stand Easy	7-20
Fig 7-10.	Stand at Ease.....	7-21
Fig 7-11.	Position of Attention.....	7-22
Fig 7-12.	Saluting	7-23
Fig 7-12.	Saluting - 1st and 3rd Positions.....	7-24
Fig 7-13.	Steeping Off at the Trail - 1st Position	7-25

Handling Instructions: For MOD Use Only

Fig 7-13.	Steeping Off at the Trail - 2nd and 3rd Positions.....	7-26
Fig 7-14.	Steeping Off in Quick Time, State Walk - 1st and 2nd Positions	7-27
Fig 7-14.	Steeping Off in Quick Time, State Walk - 3rd and 4th Positions	7-28
Fig 7-14.	Steeping Off in Quick Time, State Walk - 5th and 6th Positions	7-29
Fig 7-14.	Steeping Off in Quick Time, State Walk - 7th Position	7-30
Fig 7-15.	Steeping off in Slow Time - 1st and 2nd Positions	7-31
Fig 7-15.	Steeping off in Slow Time - 3rd and 4th Positions.....	7-32
Fig 7-15.	Steeping off in Slow Time - 5th and 6th Positions	7-33
Fig 7-15.	Steeping off in Slow Time - 7th and 8th Positions	7-34
Fig 7-16.	Saluting on the March - 1st and 2nd Positions.....	7-35
Fig 7-17.	Right Wheel - 1st Position	7-36
Fig 7-17.	Right Wheel - 2nd Position.....	7-37
Fig 7-18.	Left Wheel - 1st Position	7-37
Fig 7-18.	Left Wheel - 2nd Position	7-38
Fig 7-19.	Counter March.....	7-39
Fig 7-20.	Mark Time - 1st Position.....	7-40
Fig 7-20.	Mark Time - 2nd and 3rd Positions.....	7-41
Fig 7-20.	Mark Time - 3rd and 4th Positions.....	7-42
Fig 7-20.	Mark Time - 5th and 6th Positions.....	7-43
Fig 7-21.	Halt - 1st Position	7-44
Fig 7-21.	Halt - 2nd and 3rd Positions	7-45
Fig 7-21.	Halt - 4th and 5th Positions	7-46
Fig 7-22.	Cut-Off - 1st Position	7-47
Fig 7-22.	Cut-Off - 2nd Position.....	7-48
Fig 7-22.	Cut-Off - 3rd Position.....	7-48

DEFINITIONS

Alignment	A straight line on which a body of Riflemen is formed or is to form.
Covering	The act of placing oneself directly behind another body.
Depth	The space occupied by a body of troops from front to rear.
Distance	The space between Riflemen or bodies from front to rear.
Dressing	The act of aligning oneself with and covering others within a body of troops.
File	<ol style="list-style-type: none">Either two or three Riflemen in different ranks who are covering each other.A body of troops in two ranks facing a flank.
Single File	Men one behind another on a frontage of one at normal marching distance.
Blank File	A file in which there is no centre and rear man, or no centre man, due to the inequality of numbers within a body of troops. This file is the second from the left in three ranks and the third from the left in two ranks.
Flank	Either side of a body of troops as opposed to its front or rear.
Directing Flank	The flank by which a body of troops takes its dressing.
Frontage	The extent of ground covered laterally by a body of troops, measured from flank to flank.
Interval	The lateral space measured between men or bodies of troops on the same alignment.
Line	Troops formed on the same alignment.
Markers	Riflemen employed to mark points on which a movement is to be directed, or by which a formation or alignment is to be regulated.
Order (Close or Open)	The distance between ranks in line which is either 750 mm (30 inches) or 1500 mm (60 inches) depending on circumstances.
Rank	A line of men side by side.
Supernumerary Rank	The extra rank, fourth rank in three ranks, or third in two ranks, formed by the senior NCOs of a body of troops.

Handling Instructions: For MOD Use Only

THE RIFLES DRILL MANUAL

INTRODUCTION

The Aim of Drill

1. If Riflemen are to give their best in war and whilst on operations, they must be united. Drill instils into all ranks a sense of unity by requiring them to obey orders as one body of Riflemen. The aim of drill is:

- a. To train our Riflemen to be proud, alert and obedient.
- b. To provide a basis for teamwork and engender collective discipline.

The Means to an End

2. Military discipline is founded on drill. Drill has often been used as a forerunner to great battles, and during them it justifies itself. When victory is won, a parade, in whatever place, will most quickly restore the corporate unity of any body of Riflemen.

3. Whenever drill is taught or practiced those in command must stress its object. It must never be used as a punishment, but always as a means of raising standards within a body of Riflemen with the minimum of fuss.

The Use of the Manual

4. This manual is a book of reference for instructors and is written in lesson form.

Funeral Procedures

5. Funeral Procedures are given in Chapter 6 and include all Rifle Exercises and Sword Drills.

Some Definitions

6. Definitions are given on Page xv. Two further definitions are:

- a. *Squad*. This means a sub-unit formed for drill and is used throughout to avoid explanations.
- b. *Regulation Pause*. This refers to the short pause between two movements of drill, which is the equivalent of two marching paces in quick time.

The Parade

7. Below are laid out some guiding principles for parades:
 - a. A parade should start with an inspection of all who are on it.
 - b. A strict observance of rank should be shown; thus an officer or Riflemen, when he wishes to either join or leave parade, should report to the senior rank and ask permission to do so.
 - c. Riflemen should not walk across a parade ground when drill, in which they have no part, is taking place.
 - d. The form and purpose of a parade should be planned beforehand by those who are to command it.
 - e. At the end of a parade all ranks 'Dismiss' to show respect to the senior rank on parade.

CHAPTER 1

NOTES FOR DRILL INSTRUCTORS

SECTION 1. GENERAL

Introduction

0101. The aim of drill is written on Page ?? . All who teach and learn drill, must know this object. This chapter is devoted to the instructor and is aimed as much at those who teach potential instructors as the instructors themselves.

The Qualities of an Instructor

0102. Drill is exacting and to teach it successfully you must have the following qualities:

- a. *Patience.* Never lose your temper.
- b. *Enthusiasm.* You must inspire your squad with a will to learn.
- c. *Consistency.* Set yourself and the squad a standard. Do not deviate from it.
- d. *Humility.* Understand the squad's problems. Praise readily but do not become familiar, never humiliate individual members of the squad.
- e. *Personality.* As a drill instructor you must impress your squad with your personality and always control them fully.

Example

0103. Recruits imitate their instructors and it is by example that they will learn most. Therefore:

- a. When drilling a squad, stand at attention.
- b. When moving, march as you would wish your squad to march.
- c. When demonstrating, do so accurately and, if the movement is with a rifle, cane, etc., use that article and nothing else.
- d. Do not use bad language.
- e. Be impeccably turned out.
- f. Never exaggerate a movement of drill.

Words

0104. Use short, precise words which convey the speed of good drill, e.g., “*Strike*”, “*Force*”, “*Grip*”, but remember — ‘**Action not Words**’.

0105. - 0109. *Reserved.*

SECTION 2. THE WORD OF COMMAND

Words of Command

0110. All words of command must be clear and powerful since the way in which they are given affects the reaction which they inspire. A word of command is divided into three parts:

- a. *Introductory.* This tells the squad what movement they are about to carry out, i.e., **“MOVE TO THE RIGHT”**.
- b. *Cautionary.* The drawn out and loud reminder to the squad, i.e., **“QUICK”**.
- c. *Executive.* The high pitched, sharp command, i.e., **“MARCH!”**.

0111. Sometimes there is no need for an introductory word of command, i.e., **“RIFLES - PARADE!”** and occasionally there is no cautionary, e.g., **“FORWARD!”**.

Timing of Words of Command

0112. The cautionary word of command should be consistently drawn out over about the equivalent of four paces in quick time. There should be a pause between it and the executive word of command of:

- a. At the Halt — the regulation pause.
- b. In Quick Time — about four paces.
- c. In Slow Time — about three paces.

Development of the Word of Command

0113. Instructors should be taught how to control a squad by the following two methods:

- a. *Communication Drill.*
 - (1) First demonstrate to the squad all words of command at the halt, including rifle exercises.
 - (2) Now ‘conduct’ the squad while they give elementary words of command, insisting on clarity and power from each man.
 - (3) Divide the squad into two ranks, place them 30 meters apart, with five paces interval between each man.
 - (4) Each man should now drill his opposite number 30 meters away without regard to the men to left or right of him.

(5) After not more than ten minutes, change the ranks, so that the men in both ranks have a chance of controlling their opposite number.

b. *Mutual Drill.*

(1) Form the squad into three ranks and explain the introductory word of command and the directing flank.

(2) Call out each member of the squad in turn to drill the squad and call out another member of the squad to watch and to be prepared to comment on his performance.

Note. Be patient and encouraging. When correcting, be sure that you address your remarks to the whole squad, since they can all learn by one man's mistakes.

0114.- 0119. *Reserved.*

SECTION 3. AIDS TO DRILL

Calling Out the Time

0120. Riflemen in their early stages of training should call out the time, so that:

- a. Every member of a squad has the regulation pause fixed in his mind.
- b. The squad learn to act together.
- c. The squad remain still during the pauses.

0121. They must learn to be still when calling out "STOP" for the regulation pause.

Time and Pace

0122. Every instructor should know the rates of marching, lengths of pace and timings of foot and arms drill that are laid out below:

a. *Rates of Marching.*

- (1) Quick Time (RIFLES).....140 paces to the minute.
- (2) Quick Time (Recruits)up to 140 paces to the minute.
- (3) Quick Time (Heavy Drill)116 paces to the minute.
- (4) Slow Time65 paces to the minute.
- (5) Double Time.....180 paces to the minute.

b. *Lengths of Pace.*

- (1) Quick and Slow Time750 mm (30 inches).
- (2) Stepping Out.....830 mm (33 inches).
- (3) Stepping Short30 mm (21 inches).
- (4) Double Time.....1000 mm (40 inches).
- (5) Side Pace300 mm (12 inches).

c. *Timing of Foot and Arms Drill.* A pause is judged between movements of foot and arms drill which would allow 40 movements to be completed in a minute; this is called the regulation pause.

Mechanical Aids

0123. There are two aids the instructor may use to help him obtain accurate, smart drill. They are:

- a. The Metronome.
- b. The Drum.

The Metronome

0124. This gives an accurate check on the rate of marching and on the timing of rifle exercises. It can be set to any number of beats per minute and should be used frequently to maintain uniformity of instruction over timings. It must, itself, be checked frequently against a stop watch to ensure that it is accurate.

The Drum

0125. As an aid to instructors, the drum has three uses:

- a. When foot drill and rifle exercises are being taught by numbers at the halt, station a drummer behind the squad. A specimen word of command would sound like this:

“RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, WORKING WITH THE DRUM, SHOULDER ARMS — TAP!” “SQUAD — TAP!” “SQUAD — TAP!”

The drummer should judge the regulation pause between the cautionary word of command and his tap. The squad will react more sharply to the tap of the drum than they would to the instructor's word of command.

- b. When foot and rifle exercises are being done at the halt judging the time, station a drummer to the rear of the squad. He should have a metronome beside him (set at 40) and should be far enough behind the squad for them not to hear the tick of the metronome. A specimen word of command would sound like this:

“RIFLE EXERCISES, WORKING WITH THE DRUM, SHOULDER — TAP!” “TAP!” “TAP!”

The drummer will judge the regulation pause between the cautionary word of command and his first tap, if this is possible. Thereafter he will tap the drum on every beat of the metronome for the same number of times as there are movements.

- c. To beat the rate of marching, set the metronome to the rate required. The drummer now beats in time with the metronome and the squad stand still and listen. When the instructor is ready to practice his squad he must have the drummer beating the time to the metronome and then give **“QUICK-MARCH!”**

0126. - 0129. *Reserved.*

SECTION 4. THE SEQUENCE OF INSTRUCTION

Sequence of Instruction

0130. Use the following sequence:

- a. Formation of squad.
- b. Explanation.
- c. Demonstration.
- d. Question.
- e. Practice, which should be first collective then individual and finally collective again.

Formation of Squad

0131. Bear two factors in mind:

- a. *The comfort of the squad.* Make sure that they are not looking into the sun nor into the teeth of a gale.
- b. *The formation in which they will learn most quickly.* As a guide:

Formation	Use
Straight Line	Foot Drill
Half Circle	Rifle Exercises
Three Ranks, Open Order, Inclined	Saluting at the Halt

Explanation

0132. Explain what you are about to teach and why it is necessary.

Demonstration

0133. Break this down as follows:

- a. Complete demonstration, shouting out the words of command and calling out the timing.
- b. Demonstration by numbers, pointing out important details.
- c. Another complete demonstration.

Questions

0134. After giving the first demonstration by numbers, ask the squad if they have any questions and do so after each successive demonstration by numbers.

Practice

0135. After each demonstration by numbers, practice the squad in that movement, checking faults. Finally after demonstrating the whole movement, practice the squad, judging the time.

Basic Principles

0136. **Movement.** Drill movements in which “Heavy Drill” start from or end from the position of ‘Attention’ are in the RIFLES to start and finish from the position of ‘At Ease’ without further order. Movements are to be carried out smartly but care is to be taken to ensure that the feet are raised 6-8 inches only, but still moved sharply into the position of ‘Attention’.

0137. **Swords.** The RIFLES refer to the Bayonet as a “Sword”. Swords are never fixed except when required to do so on operations.

0138. **Timings.** The following timings are to be used:

Movement	Pace
Quick time	140 Paces to the minute
Double time	180 Paces to the minute
Slow time	65 Paces to the minute
Arms drill	65 Paces to the minute

0139. **Keeping the Time.** The method used for calling out the time is the same as for keeping step when quick marching, carrying out a movement on the “**LEFT**” and pausing on the “**RIGHT**”, i.e.,

“LEFT – RIGHT – LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT”...etc.

0140. **Slow Marching.** The slow march is not to be taught at the training establishments but is to continue to be practiced by The Band and Bugles of the Rifles.

- a. *Right and Left Forms.* Only to be used on special ceremonial occasions.
- b. *Words of Command.*

(1) The words of command to get to the position of ‘At Ease’ from the ‘Stand Easy’ are:

“STAND - READY!”

(2) The words of command to get to the position of 'Attention' from the 'At Ease' vary according to the formation you are addressing, some examples are:

"RIFLES - FIRST - BATTALION!"

"RIFLES - PARADE!"

"A - COMPANY!"

"1 - PLATOON!"

"DUTIES - PARADE!"

(3) Commanding Officers orders and staff parade are called 'Parades' and will be given the order,

"COMMANDING OFFICERS - PARADE!"

(4) A collection of men, waiting outside the cookhouse for example, will be called to 'Attention' when an officer passes, they are to be given the order,

"STAND UP!"

(5) The use of such words of command as **"COMPANY!"**, **"PLATOON!"**, **"SECTION!"** are to be used as executive words of command only, requiring the parade to come to the position of 'Attention', and are never to be used as cautionary words of command.

(6) On a formal parade it will always be possible to identify and command the unit/subunit required to come to the position of 'Attention' by the use of its title, therefore the word of command **"ATTENTION and SHUN!"** is **NEVER** to be used.

(7) Words of command in quick time are given as follows:

Command	Given as
"HALT!"	Left foot striking the ground
"FACING LEFT/RIGHT - HALT!"	Left foot striking the ground
"WILL TURN ABOUT - ABOUT - TURN!"	Right foot striking the ground
"RIGHT - TURN!"	Left foot striking the ground
"RIGHT - INCLINE!"	Left foot striking the ground

MARK - TIME!"	Left foot striking the ground
"TO THE FRONT/LEFT/RIGHT – SALUTE!"	Left foot striking the ground
"BREAK INTO DOUBLE TIME – DOUBLE - MARCH!"	Left foot striking the ground
"BREAK INTO QUICK TIME – QUICK MARCH!"	Left foot striking the ground
"HALT!" (When marking time)	Left foot striking the ground
"LEFT - INCLINE!"	Right foot striking the ground
"LEFT – TURN!"	Right foot striking the ground
"FORWARD!" (When marking time)	Given as the left knee is at its highest point
"CHANGING STEP - CHANGE STEP!"	Given on successive feet, the left then the right foot.

0141. ***Directional Flanks and Cautionary Words of Command.***

a. The word of command **"MOVE!"** as opposed to **"TURN!"** is used if the formation is about to step off, for example:

"MOVE TO YOUR RIGHT - QUICK MARCH!"

b. The word of command **"TURN!"** is to be used for all turnings at the halt, for example:

"SQUAD WILL TURN ABOUT - ABOUT - TURN!"

0142. ***Falling Out.*** The following words of command are to be used when 'Falling Out' a parade,

"TO YOUR RIGHT - FALL - OUT!"

0143. ***Arms Drill at the Halt.*** All arms drill is to start from the 'At Ease' position with the rifle in the shoulder, unless the rifle has been placed into the 'Trail' where you are to remain at 'Attention' until you are ordered to 'Shoulder Arms'.

0144. ***Arms Drill on the March.*** When marching or at the double the rifle is to be carried at the 'Trail'.

0145. **Mixed Parades.** On mixed parades (RIFLES and Heavy Infantry) the RIFLES will carry out RIFLES drill and will not conform to words of command for 'Heavy Infantry' except in the case of the 'Advance in Review Order'. The Rifles may forego their position in order of seniority and may march/double past last '**ALWAYS AT REGULATION RIFLES PACE!**'.

0146. **Parades.** Some guiding principles are shown below:

- a. The form and purpose of a parade is to be planned beforehand by those who are to command it.
- b. A parade should start with an inspection of all those who are on it.
- c. Strict observation of rank is to be shown, thus an officer or soldier, when he wishes to join or leave the parade, should report to the senior rank present and ask for permission to do so.
- d. Officers or soldiers are not to walk across a parade ground when drill in which they have no part in is taking place.
- e. At the end of a parade all ranks "**FALL - OUT!**" to show respect to the senior rank on parade.

0147. - 0149. *Reserved.*

SECTION 5. COMPLIMENTS

The Reason

0150. All compliments derive their origin from the Sovereign, to whom the highest compliment, the Royal Salute, is paid. Because of their link with the Sovereign, the following are also paid some form of compliment:

- a. Members of the Royal Family.
- b. Governors and Ministers to whom the Sovereign delegates authority.
- c. Formed bodies of troops on the Sovereign's business.
- d. All Standards, Guidons and Colours of Regiments of the Army and their equivalent in the Royal Navy, Royal Marines and Royal Air Force.
- e. All Officers, as holders of the Sovereign's commission.

The Origin

0151. The salute with the hand, the present arms and the salute with the sword, were methods by which the person paying a compliment could show the person to whom that compliment was paid that no offence was meant. They are all gestures, symbolic of loyalty and trust.

Information about Compliments

0152. Queen's Regulations lay down the details of which compliments are to be paid and on what occasions. Below are some notes on compliments which can be taught by instructors whilst the squad are standing easy.

National Anthem

0153. When the National Anthem is played, compliments are paid as follows:

- a. *When on Parade or in an Organized Party.* All ranks will stand to Attention, but only officers and warrant officers will salute. NCOs will only salute if they are in charge of an organized party.
- b. *When Not on Parade, but in Uniform.* All ranks will salute.
- c. *When Not on Parade and in Plain Clothes.* All ranks will stand to Attention.
- d. *Officers with Drawn Swords.* They will stand at the Carry.

Military Funerals

0154. All ranks passing a military funeral will salute the bier. Formed bodies will pay the appropriate compliments.

When Riding a Bicycle

0155. The rider of a bicycle (motor or pedal) will not salute or look to his flank when the bicycle is moving. When stationary he will salute by giving 'Eyes Right' or 'Left' but will not take his hands from the handle bars.

When in a Military Vehicle

0156. Occupants will behave as follows:

- a. Drivers will never salute.
- b. Those beside them will salute with the hand.
- c. Soldiers other than these will sit to Attention.

Compliments by a Formed Body of Troops on the March

0157. When a formed body of troops which is on the march passes any of the following:

- a. The Queen and other members of the Royal Family.
- b. Armed bodies of troops on the march commanded by an officer.
- c. Guards and Escorts.
- d. Their own Brigade Commander (or CRA in the Royal Artillery), General Officers, Officers of the Royal Navy or Royal Air Force of equivalent rank, when in uniform.

0158. The Commander will give the order **"BY THE LEFT / RIGHT"** **"EYES — RIGHT!"** or **"LEFT!"**. All officers and other ranks in command of sub-units will salute.

Standards, Guidons and Colours

0159. These are entitled to the highest compliments:

- a. Guards will turn out and present arms.
- b. Formed bodies will fix present arms, or if on the march and passing stationary Standards, Guidons or Colours will give 'Eyes Right' or 'Left'.

- c. Individuals will halt, face passing Standards, Guidons or Colours and salute, or if passing will salute to the right or left.
- d. Units passing each other with uncased Standards, Guidons or Colours will give 'Eyes Right' or 'Left' to each other.
- e. When Standards, Guidons or Colours are marched on or off parade, the unit will Present Arms and the Band will play the 'Point of War'. If no Band are present, a bugler will sound the general salute.
- f. The only times when a Colour is not saluted are:
 - (1) When the Colours are carried by a unit forming a part of the escort at a military funeral. (The salute is given to the bier.)
 - (2) When the Colour is cased.

Note. The same compliments will be paid to the Colours of the Royal Navy, Royal Marines and the Royal Air Force.

Last Post

0160. During the playing of Last Post at a funeral or remembrance service all ranks should stand to attention and officers should salute. They should return to the position of attention at the conclusion of Last Post and remain at this position throughout the silence and the playing of Reveille. Clear instructions should be given to all to ensure uniformity. It should be noted that, in accordance with their particular drills, the firing party and bearer party commander will remain at the present throughout any silence following the playing of Last Post at a military funeral. If the Last Post is followed by a period of silence or followed immediately by the Reveille, the silence should not be disturbed by the movement of arms of the Firing Party. The Firing Party therefore stay at the present throughout until the end of reveille and therefore officers **MUST** stay at the salute as well.

0161. - 0169. *Reserved.*

SECTION 6. TEACHING DRILL - SEQUENCE

0170. An example for the guidance of an instructional drill period is shown below.

0171. "Taking you a stage further in your foot drill I am now going to teach you the left turn at the halt. This movement is taught to enable an individual or a body of Riflemen to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the left in smart soldier like and uniformed manner. On the command "**STAND - EASY!**" look this way and I will give you a complete demonstration of the movement, "**STAND - EASY!**".

0172. The instructor at this point gives a complete demonstration of the left turn calling out the time, "**ONE STOP- TWO STOP - THREE STOP - OUT!**".

0173. "There you saw a complete demonstration of the left turn, note for instructional purpose this movement is broken down into parts, each part being numbered. Continue to look this way and will demonstrate the actions carried out receipt of the word of command "**TURNINGS AT THE HALT BY NUMBERS - LEFT TURN - ONE!**". The instructor then demonstrates the first part of the movement whilst calling out the time, he then explains what he did and emphasises points to note and asks the squad if there are any questions. The squad then practice the first part of the movement collectively under instruction calling out "**ONE!**", then individually and then collectively again.

0174. "Relax and look this way, I left you in this position, continue to look this way and I will demonstrate the actions to be carried out receipt of the word of command "**SQUAD - TWO!**". After demonstrating the second part of the movement the instructor then follows the same sequence as in paragraph 4 above, he continues this sequence until the complete left turn has been taught by numbers.

0175. "Look this way, relax and I will now give you a complete and final demonstration of the left turn". The instructor then demonstrates once again the complete movement, calling out the time "**ONE STOP- TWO STOP - THREE STOP - OUT!**", he then asks the squad if there are any final questions and explains that on the execution of the left turn they are to call out "**ONE STOP- TWO STOP - THREE STOP - OUT!**".

0176. The left turn is then practiced collectively, individually and again collectively until the correct standard has been achieved.

0177. - 0179. *Reserved.*

SECTION 7. NOTES FOR INSPECTING OFFICERS

Introduction

0170. Before drill all Riflemen should be inspected to ensure that:

- a. They are dressed correctly.
- b. Their clothing and equipment is serviceable and clean.
- c. Their weapons are clean (and cared for).
- d. They are alert and healthy.

0171. Riflemen should be at Attention when inspected, though whether they shoulder their rifles depends on the length of the inspection.

0172. The inspecting officer, warrant or non commissioned officer should be accompanied by the next senior warrant or non commissioned officer who should note down anything that he is told. The next senior warrant or non commissioned officer should be posted in front of the squad to see that the squad stand still and look to their front.

General Impression

0173. Look at the squad first:

- a. Are they standing correctly to Attention?
- b. Is their dressing and covering off good?

0174. Take a quick look at each Rifleman when you come to him:

- a. Is he clean and shaved?
- b. Is he standing well?
- c. Is his uniform clean and pressed? Does it fit him?

Detail

0175. **Head.**

- a. Cap — clean and brushed.
- b. Badge — clean and in correct place.
- c. No. 1 Dress Cap — Set up correctly.

- d. Beret — bow sewn down neatly.
- e. Hair — tidy and of a reasonable length.

0176. **Body.**

- a. Collar — clean.
- b. Tie — correctly tied, central and not tucked into shirt.
- c. Uniform — well fitted, clean and pressed.
- d. Pockets — emptied of bulky objects.
- e. Medals — clean and sewn on correctly.
- f. Buttons — sewn on and fastened, with no stray ends of cotton.

0177. **Waistbelt.**

- a. Fitted so that it will not allow the jacket to ride up underneath it during a parade.
- b. Fitted so that the buckle is in the centre of the body and the belt.
- c. Correctly fastened and polished.

0178. **Trousers.**

- a. Braced up so that they break on the instep in front.
- b. Pressed correctly and not excessively worn on the inside.

0179. **Boots.**

- a. Serviceable and polished.
- b. Tightly laced with the laces so tied that they cannot come undone during a parade.

0180. **Weapons.** Clean and dry.

Some Don'ts

0181. **Don't:**

- a. Make it a battle between you and them.
- b. Touch them.

- c. Ridicule or humiliate individual members of the squad.
- d. Spend a long time in front of each man.
- e. Allow those accompanying you to inspect for you.
- f. Point vaguely at things and expect them to vanish or change colour.

Some Do's

0182. **Do.**

- a. Be consistent and impersonal.
- b. Be decisive and tell the warrant or non commissioned officer who is accompanying you the action that you require.
- c. Give praise readily.

CHAPTER 2

FOOT DRILL AT THE HALT, MARCHING AND DRILL IN LINE

INTRODUCTION

Foot Drill at the Halt

0201. The two basic movements of foot drill used in instruction are:

- a. 'Bend the right/left knee/leg'.
- b. 'Force the right/left foot forward'.

0202. ***'Bend the Right/Left Knee/Leg'***. One leg is kept braced back with the foot flat on the ground. The opposite leg is raised 6 – 8 inches, in front of the body with the knee bent. The foot hangs naturally, with the toe directly under the knee. The leg is then straightened and the foot forced to the ground so that on impact the ball and heel of the foot reach the ground at the same time. The whole movement is completed at speed.

0203. ***'Force the Right/Left Foot Forward'***. One leg is kept braced back with the foot flat on the ground. The other leg forces forward with the knee braced, ready to carry the weight of the body forward.

0204. These two basic movements should be demonstrated to recruits before Lesson 1.

LESSON 1. POSITIONS OF ATTENTION, STAND AT EASE AND STAND EASY AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0205. **Aim.** *To teach the positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy at the Halt.*

0206. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

0207. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

0208. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

0209. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0210. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

0211. **Explain:** To introduce foot drill the positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy are taught first. The reason for these movements is to enable an individual or a body of Riflemen to form a base, from which all other drill movements can originate in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.

The Position of Attention

0212. **The instructor is to demonstrate the position of Attention. Giving the words of command "RIFLES - PARADE!". Explain:** Both feet are flat and firm on the ground heels in line and touching, with the toes at an angle of 30 degrees from a line, front centre of the body, both knees are braced. The arms are straight and held into the sides of the body, the forearms forced in behind the hip bones and the wrists straight. The hands are closed with the thumbs vertical and facing to the front, the backs of the fingers touching the thigh, just behind the seam of the trousers. The shoulders held down and back to bring the chest to a normal position without straining or stiffening. The head is held up with the neck touching the back of the collar. The eyes are open — still, and looking just above their own height. The chin is raised and the mouth closed. The body is now in the position of Attention.

0213. **Confirm by questions and practice first bringing the squad into the position. Explain that they are not required to call out the timing at this stage.**

Stand at Ease

0214. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “STAND AT — EASE!”, at the same time calling out “OUT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on receipt of the word of command the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot comes 6 - 8 inches off the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground 300 mm (12 inches) from the right foot. At the same time, the arms are forced behind the back by the shortest possible route keeping the arms straight. Place the back of the right hand in the palm of the left hand the right thumb crossed over the left thumb, fingers straight together. The body is frozen in this position. If equipment is worn, keep the arms to the side. *Explain:* On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “OUT”.

0215. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of the At Ease and the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0216. *Confirm by questions and practice first collectively, then individually and collectively again and then adopt the At Ease position.*

Stand Easy

0217. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “STAND — EASY!”. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the body is allowed to relax, whilst still in the At Ease position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out. The body is now in the correct position of the Stand Easy.

0218. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Stand Ready

0219. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “STAND - READY!”. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the body is braced up into the position of At Ease. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “UP!”. The body is now in the correct position of At Ease.

0220. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Stand Easy and practice.*

Standing to Attention from Standing at Ease

0221. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “RIFLES – PARADE!” at the same time calling out “ONE STOP” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6 – 8 inches from the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down beside the right to resume the correct position of Attention. At the same time the arms are forced to the side of the body into the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “ONE STOP”. The body is now in the correct position of Attention.

0222. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0223. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of all movements then confirm by questions and practice collectively, individually, then collectively ensuring that on the execution of the command “**STAND AT — EASE!**” and “**RIFLES – PARADE!**” the squad calls out “**ONE STOP!**”.*

Conclusion

0224. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions to and from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include a look forward to the Dressing movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

0225. – 0229. *Reserved.*



Fig 2-1. Position of Attention



Front View



Rear View

Fig 2-2. Stand at Ease



Front View



Rear View

Fig 2-3. Stand Easy

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

FORMING UP IN THREE RANKS AND DRESSING

Forming Up in Three Ranks

0230. At the beginning of their training, the squad must be introduced to their basic formation. To adopt this formation they are to be placed in close order in three ranks (front, centre and rear). There will be an interval of one arm's length (with hands closed) between each man and a distance of 750 mm (30 inches) between ranks (measured from the heels of one rank to the toes of the rank behind it). The distance in close order may be measured by the men in the right hand file raising their right arm in line with and in front of their right shoulder. The knuckles of the closed hand should just fail to reach the shoulder of the man in front.

Dressing

0231. Within a body of Riflemen who are drilling, every Rifleman must be in line with, and at the correct interval from, the man to left or right of him; he must also be directly behind, and at the correct distance from, his equivalent in the rank in front of him. This is dressing.

0232. *Reserved.*

LESSON 2. DRESSING IN THREE RANKS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0233. **Aim.** *To teach Dressing in Three Ranks.*
0234. **Timings.** *One 25 minute period.*
0235. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0236. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*
0237. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0238. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

0239. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is Dressing in Three Ranks. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to take up alignment correctly in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Right Dress

0240. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "DRESSING, RIGHT — DRESS! EYES — FRONT!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For the purpose of instruction the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Right Dress — One

0241. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "DRESSING, CALLING THE TIME, RIGHT DRESS — ONE!". Explain:* Immediately on the command, in a sharp soldier like manner spring into the position of 'Attention', after a pause (less the right hand man) the head and eyes are then forced through an angle of 90 degrees over the right shoulder, at the same time the right arm is forced up level, over to the right side of the body. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out "ONE STOP".

0242. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder, the right arm is locked at the elbow with the knuckles in line with the shoulder of the man on the immediate right.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0243. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

Right Dress — Two

0244. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the feet are moved in short, quick steps until the body is correctly aligned with the right hand man (who stands still) or the soldier on the immediate right. Once the individual is correctly aligned the body is frozen in the position of Attention. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “HEAD STOP - DRESSING!”.

0245. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder, the knuckles are touching the upper arm of the man on the immediate right in line with the shoulder.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0246. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Eyes — Front

0247. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “EYES — FRONT!”, at the same time calling out “FRONT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head and eyes are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the front, at the same time the right arm is forced down to the correct position of Attention. After a pause the left foot is raised 6 - 8 inches and forced out 12 inches adopting the correct position of the ‘Stand At Ease’, the body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “FRONT - OUT”.

0248. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rank is correctly aligned.
- b. The body is held erect and square to the front.

0249. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of Both Complete Movements

0250. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of both movements. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out "ONE STOP — HEAD STOP - DRESSING". Moving on the NUMBERS and remaining perfectly still on the "STOPS", thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute. Note that:*

- a. *On the command "**EYES — FRONT!**" call out "FRONT - OUT".*
- b. *Those in the centre and rear rank will glance out of the corner of the eye to ensure correct covering off front to rear.*
- c. *The right hand man of the centre and rear rank on receipt of the word of command "**RIGHT DRESS — ONE STOP!**" will force his right arm forward, thumb uppermost, level and in line with the man to his front, in order to judge the correct distance between ranks (Recruits only).*

Alternative Drills in the Movement

0251. *Explain: The following variations may be used for trained soldiers:*

- a. *The arm is not raised when dressing.*
- b. *Dressing may be ordered by either flank or centre.*
- c. *Instead of the command "**EYES — FRONT!**", each file may turn their heads to the front in succession from the point by which they are dressing.*

0252. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

0253. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Open and Close Order movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

0254. – 0259. *Reserved*



Fig 2-4. Right Dress — Front View

LESSON 3. OPEN ORDER AT THE HALT — FRONT RANK AND CLOSE ORDER AT THE HALT — REAR RANK

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0260. **Aim.** *To teach the Open Order at the Halt — Front Rank and Close Order at the Halt — Rear Rank.*
0261. **Timings.** *One 30 minute period.*
0262. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0263. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*
0264. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0265. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

0266. **Explain:** *The next stage in foot drill is the Open Order at the Halt — Front Rank and Close Order at the Halt — Rear Rank. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to Dress in Open Order in three ranks at the Halt, and when being drilled in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Open Order

0267. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "DRESSING IN OPEN ORDER, RIGHT — DRESS!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain: For the purpose of instruction the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Dressing in Open Order, Right Dress — One

0268. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "DRESSING, BY NUMBERS, IN OPEN ORDER, RIGHT DRESS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, come to the position of 'Attention', The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out "ONE STOP".*

Right Dress — Two

0269. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* The left foot is forced forward a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches), placing the foot flat and firm on the ground. The right leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is raised 6 – 8 inches from the ground, with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down beside the left to resume the position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “TWO STOP”.

0270. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right toes are on the ground, heel raised.
- b. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0271. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Right Dress — Three

0272. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, eyes and right arm are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “HEAD STOP”.

0273. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0274. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Right Dress — Dressing

0275. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — DRESSING!”, at the same time calling out “DRESSING” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the feet are moved in short, quick paces until the body is correctly aligned with the right hand man (who looks to his front) or the soldier on the immediate right. Once correctly aligned, the body is frozen in the position of Attention. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “DRESSING”.

0276. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0277. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Eyes — Front

0278. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “EYES — FRONT!”, at the same time calling out “FRONT” as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the head and eyes are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the front and the right arm is forced into the right side of the body. After a pause the left foot is raised 6-8 inches and forced out 12 inches adopting the correct position of the ‘Stand At Ease’, The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “HEAD STOP - OUT”.*

0279. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The individual is in Open Order.
- b. The body is held erect and square to the front.

0280. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0281. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “ONE STOP, TWO STOP, — HEAD STOP — DRESSING”, thus observing the regulation pause, working on the “NUMBERS” and standing still on the “STOPS”. Note also that:*

- a. *The centre rank stands still during the second movements. They must observe the regulation pause and then carry out the dressing. The centre and rear ranks must glance out of the corner of the eye to maintain correct alignment front to rear.*
- b. *When dressing in two ranks the front rank stand still and the rear rank only move.*
- c. *The actions carried out by the front rank are the same for the rear rank when moving into Close Order.*
- d. *The right hand men of the centre and rear ranks do not force their right arm forward.*

Conclusion

0282. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Close and Open Order at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.*

0283. - 0289. *Reserved.*

LESSON 4. CLOSE ORDER AT THE HALT — FRONT RANK AND OPEN ORDER AT THE HALT — REAR RANK

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0290. **Aim.** *To teach Close Order at the Halt — Front Rank and Open Order at the Halt — Rear Rank.*
0291. **Timings.** *One 15 minute period.*
0292. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0293. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*
0294. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0295. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

0296. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is the Close Order at the Halt — Front Rank and Open Order at the Halt — Rear Rank. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to dress in Close Order in three ranks, after inspection, being drilled, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Close Order — Front Rank

0297. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "DRESSING IN CLOSE ORDER, RIGHT — DRESS!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Dressing in Close Order, Right Dress — One

0298. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "DRESSING, BY NUMBERS, IN OPEN ORDER, RIGHT DRESS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, come to the position of 'Attention', the body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out "ONE STOP".*

02109. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02100. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

Right Dress — Two

02101. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* The left foot is forced rearward a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches), placing the foot flat and firm on the ground. The right leg is then bent in front of the body so that the foot is raised 6-8 inches from the ground, with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down beside the left to resume the position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “TWO STOP”.

02102. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right toes are on the ground, heel raised.
- b. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02103. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Right Dress — Three

02104. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, eyes and right arm are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “HEAD STOP”.

Right Dress — Dressing

02105. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — DRESSING!”, at the same time calling out “DRESSING” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the feet are moved in short, quick paces until the body is correctly aligned with the right hand man (who looks to his front) or the soldier immediately to the right. Once correctly aligned, the body is frozen in the position of Attention. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “DRESSING”.

02106. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02107. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02108. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE STOP — TWO STOP — HEAD STOP — DRESSING", thus observing the regulation pause, working on the "NUMBERS" and standing still on the "STOPS". Note also that:*

- a. *The centre rank stands still during the second movements. They must observe the regulation pause and then carry out the dressing. The centre and rear ranks must glance out of the corner of the eye to maintain correct alignment front to rear.*
- b. *When dressing in two ranks the front rank stand still and the rear only move.*
- c. *The actions carried out by the front rank Close Order are the same for the rear rank in Open Order.*
- d. *The right hand men of the centre and rear ranks do not force their right arm forward.*

02109. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02110. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Turnings at the Halt movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

02111. - 02119. *Reserved.*

LESSON 5. TURNINGS AT THE HALT LEFT AND RIGHT TURNS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02120. **Aim.** *To teach the Left and Right Turns at the Halt.*

02121. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02122. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02123. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02124. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02125. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02126. **Explain:** The next stages in foot drill are the Left and Right Turns at the Halt. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the left or right at the Halt, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Left Turn

02127. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, LEFT — TURN!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Left Turn — One

02128. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, LEFT TURN — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, come to the position of 'Attention', The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE STOP".

Left Turn — Two

02129. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “**SQUAD — TWO!**”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain: On the command, the head, shoulders, body and left foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the left by means of pivoting on the left heel and right toe.*

02130. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground with the right heel raised.
- b. The body weight is over the left foot with the knees braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02131. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

Left Turn — Three

02132. Immediately on the command, the right knee is bent and forced in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced to the ground to resume the correct position of Attention. After a pause the left foot is raised 6-8 inches and forced out 12 inches adopting the correct position of the ‘Stand At Ease’, The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “THREE STOP - OUT”.

02133. **Points to Note.** The body is now facing the new direction having resumed the correct position of Attention.

02134. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

The Right Turn

02135. *The instructor is to repeat the instruction for the Right Turn.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02136. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of both movements. On the execution of the movements the squad will call out the regulation time of “ONE STOP — TWO STOP — THREE STOP - OUT”, moving on the “NUMBERS” and remaining perfectly still on the “STOPS”, thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute.*

02137. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02138. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the About Turn at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.*

02139. – 02149. *Reserved.*



First Position



Second Position

Fig 2-5. Left Turn at the Halt



First Position



Second Position

Fig 2-6. Right Turn at the Halt

LESSON 6. TURNINGS AT THE HALT — ABOUT TURN

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02150. **Aim.** *To teach the About Turn at the Halt.*

02151. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02152. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02153. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02154. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02155. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02156. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is The About Turn at the Halt. The reason the movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to turn through an angle of 180 degrees to the right, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The About Turn

02157. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, ABOUT — TURN!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

About Turn — One

02158. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, ABOUT TURN — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, come to the position of 'Attention', The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE STOP".

About Turn — Two

02159. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 180 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel and left toe. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO STOP”.

02160. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground with the left toes on the ground with the heel raised.
- b. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02161. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

About Turn — Three

02162. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down beside the right foot. The body is frozen in this position. After a pause the left foot is raised 6-8 inches and forced out 12 inches adopting the correct position of the ‘Stand At Ease’, The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “THREE STOP - OUT”.

02163. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of At Ease facing its new direction.

02164. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02165. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out the regulation time of “ONE STOP — TWO STOP - THREE STOP — OUT”, moving on the “NUMBERS” and remaining perfectly still on “STOPS”, thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute.*

02166. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02167. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Inclinations movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

02168. - 02179. *Reserved.*



Side View



Rear View

Fig 2-7. About Turn at the Halt

LESSON 7. INCLININGS TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02180. **Aim.** *To teach the Right and Left Inclines at the Halt.*

02181. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02182. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02183. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02184. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02185. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02186. **Explain:** The next stages in foot drill are the Right and Left Inclines at the Halt. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to turn through an angle of 45 degrees to the right or left at the Halt, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Right Incline

02187. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "INCLININGS, RIGHT — INCLINE!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Right Incline — One

02188. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "INCLININGS, BY NUMBERS, RIGHT INCLINE — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, come to the position of 'Attention', The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE STOP".

Right Incline — Two

02189. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 45 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel and left toe. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO STOP”.

02190. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground with the left heel raised.
- b. The body weight is over the right foot with the knees braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02191. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

Right Incline — Three

02192. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down beside the right foot. The body is frozen in this position. After a pause the left foot is raised 6-8 inches and forced out 12 inches adopting the correct position of the ‘Stand At Ease’. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “THREE STOP - OUT”.

02193. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of At Ease facing its new direction.

02194. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

The Left Incline

02195. *The instructor is to repeat the instruction for the Left Incline.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02196. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements. There is a difference in dressing and covering which occurs when Inclined. Each man's right shoulder must be aligned with the centre of the back of the man next to him and in the case of those in the centre and rear ranks the left shoulder must cover the centre of the back of the man originally covered off. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out the regulation time of “ONE STOP — TWO STOP — THREE STOP — OUT”, moving on the “NUMBERS” and remaining perfectly still on “STOPS”, thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute.*

02197. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02198. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Saluting to the Front at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.*

02199. – 02209. *Reserved.*

LESSON 8. SALUTING TO THE FRONT AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02210. **Aim.** *To teach the Salute to the Front at the Halt.*

02211. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02212. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02213. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02214. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

02215. **Miscellaneous.** *This movement is taught before the main lesson of Saluting to the Flank.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02216. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in Open Order, in three ranks, inclined.*

Introduction

02217. **Explain:** *Saluting is introduced by teaching the Salute to the Front at the Halt. The reason the movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to pay the correct compliment to a commissioned officer in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Salute to the Front

02218. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE FRONT — SALUTE!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Salute to the Front — One

02219. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE FRONT — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain: The squad will spring to the position of Attention, after pause the right arm is raised sideways until it is horizontal, straightening the fingers and thumb keeping them together, palm facing to the front. The elbow is then bent keeping the wrist and hand straight, until the tip of the fore*

finger is one inch above the right eye, palm facing to the front. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “ONE STOP – UP 2,3”.

02220. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of the Salute and is held erect and square to the front.

02221. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Salute to the Front — Two

02222. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the elbow is forced forward, and the finger and thumb curled into a fist. The hand is then forced down to the side of the body by straightening the arm and return to the At Ease Position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “DOWN STOP – OUT”.

02223. **Points to Note.** The body is now back to the position of At Ease and is held erect and square to the front.

02224. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02225. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “ONE STOP — UP 2,3, — DOWN STOP — OUT”.*

Saluting to the Front

02226. *Explain:* When a soldier delivers a message or speaks to an officer he approaches, halts, salutes, delivers the message or speaks. He then salutes again, turns in the direction in which he is to retire and marches away.

02227. *Explain:* The order for practicing this movement is given as the left heel strikes the ground. Then the soldier or squad:

- a. Halts.
 - b. Salutes to the Front
 - c. Salutes to the Front again
 - d. Turns About
 - e. Steps off in Quick Time.
- } Judging the regulation pause
} between each movement.
}

02228. *Confirm by questions and practice all movements.*

Conclusion

02229. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

02230. – 02239. *Reserved.*



Fig 2-8. Saluting to the Front at the Halt



Fig 2-9. Saluting to the Right Flank



Fig 2-10. Saluting to the Left Flank

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

SALUTING

General

02240. The following movements with the cane should be practiced for saluting to the right or left flank on the march and to the front.

Saluting to a Flank — Right or Left — On the March

02241. The following are the detailed actions for these movements:

- a. **“SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT — ONE!”**. This order is given as the left heel strikes the ground. On the next left foot place the cane vertical in the left arm and freeze.
- b. **“SQUAD — TWO!”**. On this order, take a further pace with the right foot and on the next left foot return the right hand to the side and freeze.
- c. **“SQUAD — THREE!”**. On this order, take a further pace with the right foot and on the next left foot salute to the right and freeze.
- d. **“SQUAD — FOUR, FIVE, SIX, SEVEN!”**. On this order, take a further pace on each word of command, remaining at the salute.
- e. **“SQUAD — EIGHT!”**. On this order, return the right arm to the side and the head to the front as the right heel strikes the ground and freeze.
- f. **“SQUAD — NINE!”**. On this order given as the left heel strikes the ground, with the right hand seize the cane close to the left arm and freeze.
- g. **“SQUAD — TEN!”**. On this order, take a further pace with the right foot and on the next left foot, bring the cane to the Trail, adjusting the hand to the point of balance and freeze.
- h. **“SQUAD — ELEVEN!”**. On the order, take a further pace with the right foot and on the next left foot swing both arms and continue marching.

Saluting to the Front

02242. For this movement, the order **“SALUTE TO THE FRONT — SALUTE!”** is given as for the **“HALT!”**. The squad should halt, with the cane at the Trail, place the cane vertically in the left arm; return the right arm to the side; salute, salute again; turn about and step off, bringing the cane to the Trail — working from the first left foot.

LESSON 9. SALUTING TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT FLANK ON THE MARCH

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02243. **Aim.** *To teach Saluting to a Flank on the March.*

02244. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02245. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02246. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02247. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02248. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02249. **Explain:** The next stage in saluting is to learn the Salute to the Right and Left on the March. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to pay the correct compliments to a commissioned officer or an uncased Colour in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Salute to the Right

02250. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT — SALUTE!", at the same time calling out "CHECK — UP — ONE — TWO — THREE — FOUR — FIVE — DOWN — SWING" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Salute to the Right — One

02251. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the left heel strikes the ground, a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the right foot, at the same time swinging the left arm forward and the right arm to the rear. Then a further full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the left foot. As the heel of the left foot contacts the ground,

the right arm is forced from the rear, through the position of Attention, into the correct position of the Salute to the Right. At the same time, the left arm is forced down to the side of the body. At the same time the head and eyes are forced square across the right shoulder into the correct position of the Salute to the Right, and the body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "CHECK - ONE".

02252. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the left heel is on the ground, with the toes raised.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The head, eyes, right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow are in the correct position of the Salute to the Right whilst the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02253. *The instructor is then to turn the squad to the left, give the order "Quick March" and confirm by practice.*

Salute to the Right — Two

02254. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, a further four full marching paces of 750 mm (30 inches) are taken. The body is then frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO — THREE — FOUR — FIVE".

02255. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left heel is on the ground with the toes raised, both knees braced.
- b. The head, eyes, right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow remain in the correct position of the Salute throughout the execution of these four full marching paces.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02256. *The squad is to adopt the 'Salute to the Right — One' position and confirm by practice.*

Salute to the Right — Three

02257. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches)

is taken with the right foot. As the right heel strikes the ground the head and eyes are forced square to the front. At the same time, the right hand is forced down to the side of the body, closing the fingers and thumb into a fist. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "DOWN".

02258. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right heel is on the ground, toes raised.
- b. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02259. *The squad is to adopt the 'Salute to the Right — Two' position and confirm by practice.*

Squad — Four

02260. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the left foot, at the same time the right arm is swung forward, the left arm is swung to the rear. The instructor continues to march in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "SWING".

02261. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first. The right arm is swung forward level with the waist belt.
- b. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 140 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02262. *Confirm by practice from the last position.*

The Salute to the Left

02263. *Explain:*

- a. The Salute to the Left is exactly the same, changing RIGHT for LEFT, etc.
- b. A formed body of Riflemen on the march pays compliments by giving 'Eyes Right/Left' and 'Eyes Front'. The officer, warrant officer or non commissioned officer in charge will salute.

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02264. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements. On their execution the squad will call out "CHECK — ONE — TWO — THREE — FOUR — FIVE — DOWN — SWING".*

02265. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02266. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

02267. - 02269. *Reserved.*

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

PAYING OF COMPLIMENTS

Collectively

02270. **Eyes Right and Left.** A formed body of Riflemen on the march pays compliments to the left or right in the following way:

- a. *In Slow Time.* The following are the words of command:

(1) **“BY THE RIGHT, EYES — RIGHT!”**. This is given as the right foot touches the ground. A 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot and as it touches the ground, the head is turned through 90 degrees to the right, and marching continues in this position. Common faults are:

(a) Shortening the length of pace and losing balance and direction.

(b) Leaning back.

(c) Not looking upwards and at the person being paid the compliment.

Note. The right hand man or right guide will look to his front throughout and officers and NCOs in command of men will salute.

(2) **“EYES — FRONT!”**. This is given as the right foot reaches the ground, when the body of Riflemen is past the object of the ‘Eyes — Right’. A 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot and as it touches the ground the head is turned to the front and marching continues in this position.

- b. *In Quick Time.* Using the same words of command:

(1) **“BY THE RIGHT, EYES — RIGHT!”**. This is given as the left heel strikes the ground. When the left heel next strikes, turn the head through 90 degrees to the right, continue to swing the arms throughout. Common faults and notes are as for Slow Time.

(2) **“EYES — FRONT!”**. This is given as the left heel strikes the ground. When the left heel next strikes turn the head to the front.

Individually

02271. **Saluting when in Plain Clothes and without Head Dress.** A soldier, without head dress, whether in uniform or plain clothes, salutes an officer in the following ways:

a. When he passes an officer he will return his arms to the position of Attention and turn his head in the direction of the officer on the left foot. He will take five paces in this position and return his head to the front on the sixth pace.

b. When he meets an officer or is passed by one he will stand to Attention facing that officer.

Note: If a soldier is in plain clothes with head dress, he removes it and acts as above.

02272. **Saluting with the Left Hand.** A soldier who has injured his right hand or arm will salute with the left hand.

02273. Instructors should teach their squads these procedures for Compliments at this stage of training, at a convenient time in the lessons.

02274. *Reserved.*

LESSON 10. DISMISSING AND FALLING OUT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02275. **Aim.** *To teach Dismissing and Falling Out.*

02276. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02277. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02278. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02279. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02280. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02281. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn to Dismiss and Fall Out from parade. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to dismiss or fall out from a parade in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Dismiss/Fall Out

02282. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "DISMISS/FALL OUT!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* The actions for both movements are the same, broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Dismiss/Fall Out — One

02283. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "DISMISSING/FALLING OUT, BY NUMBERS, DISMISS/FALL OUT — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, come to the position of 'Attention', after a pause the head, shoulders, body and right foot are forced to the right through an angle of 90 degrees by means of pivoting on the right heel and left toes. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of the movement the squad will call out "ONE STOP - TWO STOP".

02284. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the left toes are on the ground with the heel raised.
- b. Both knees are braced with the remainder of the body held erect and square to the front.

02285. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

Dismiss/Fall Out — Two

02286. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches off the ground, with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced to the ground beside the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "THREE STOP".

02287. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body with both knees braced.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02288. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Squad — Three

02289. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches). At the same time, the left arm is forced to the rear and the right arm forward. The instructor continues to march in quick time for three full marching paces and then breaks off. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT — RIGHT — LEFT".

02290. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first.
- b. The right arm is forced forward level and in line with the shoulder, the left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 140 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is frozen in this position.

02291. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement and Procedures

02292. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of the Turn, the squad will call out "ONE STOP — TWO STOP — THREE STOP — LEFT, RIGHT, LEFT".*

02293. **Note.** *Explain:* The follow up actions to be carried out by the squad on "Dismiss/Fall out" are as follows:

a. *On the Dismiss.* The squad will always be dismissed in Open Order when without rifles. If an officer is present the squad will salute before stepping off. When the squad break-off in quick time they will remain in step within individual groups, until they leave the parade ground.

b. *On the Fall Out.* No salute is necessary as troops will not leave the vicinity of the parade.

Conclusion

02294. **End of Lesson Drill.**

a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*

b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*

c. *Summary. To include the Side Pace movement to be taught in the next lesson.*

02295. - 02299. *Reserved.*

LESSON 11. THE SIDE PACE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02300. **Aim.** *To teach the Side Pace.*

02301. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02302. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02303. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02304. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02305. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02306. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Side Pace. The reason the movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to Side Pace in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Side Pace — To the Left

02307. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "ONE PACE, LEFT CLOSE — MARCH!", at the same time calling out "ONE TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Left Close March — One

02308. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "LEFT CLOSE MARCHING, BY NUMBERS, LEFT CLOSE MARCH — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, come to the position of 'Attention', after a pause, the left leg is kept straight. The left foot is then placed to the ground 300 mm (12 inches) from the right foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE STOP - ONE".

02309. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, with a distance of 300 mm (12 inches) between the heels.
- b. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02310. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

Left Close March — Two

02311. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down to the ground beside the left foot. The body is frozen in this position. After a pause the squad will adopt the position of At Ease. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO - OUT”.

02312. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of At Ease, 300 mm (12 inches) to the left of its last position and is held erect and square to the front.

02313. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02314. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “ONE STOP – ONE – TWO – OUT”.*

02315. **Note.** *Explain:*

- a. Only eight side paces may be ordered at any one time. Further distance requires the squad to be turned and marched.
- b. To side pace RIGHT, the right leg is kept straight and placed 300 mm (12 inches) to the right and the left leg is bent to resume the position of Attention.

02316. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02317. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include a look forward to Marching to be taught in the next lesson.*

02318. – 02329. *Reserved.*

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

MARCHING

Rates of Marching

02330. The British Army drills on the move by marching in either Quick or Slow Time. The quick march is normally carried out at 116 paces to the minute however The Rifles march at 140 paces to the minute, all Army recruits should start their training by marching at up to 140 paces to the minute to encourage agility and alertness. The slow march is carried out at 65 paces to the minute and is used primarily in ceremonial.

02331. Throughout the army, units have their traditional rates of quick marching, which they may use unless several units, who have different rates of marching, are on the same parade, then all will march at 116 paces to the minute, except The Rifles who will march past at 140 paces to the minute if practicable. On mixed ceremonial parades, The Rifles are prepared to forego their position of seniority and march past last at the regulation RIFLES pace.

02332. *Reserved.*

LESSON 12. MARCHING AND HALTING IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02333. **Aim.** *To teach Marching and Halting in Quick Time.*

02334. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02335. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02336. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02337. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02338. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02339. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn Marching and Halting in Quick Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to march at the regulation rate of 140 paces per minute and to halt in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Marching and Halting in Quick Time

02340. *The instructor is to demonstrate both complete movements, giving the words of command "QUICK — MARCH!", at the same time calling out "ONE STOP — LEFT — RIGHT — LEFT", for 11 paces. The instructor is then to halt, at the same time calling out "CHECK — ONE TWO STOP - OUT!" as the movement is being executed. Explain:* Dealing firstly with Marching in Quick Time. For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Quick March — One

02341. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARCHING, BY NUMBERS, QUICK MARCH — ONE!", at the same time calling "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, come to the position of 'Attention', pause then the left foot is forced forward, a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace. At the same time, the right arm is forced forward and the left arm to the rear. The body is frozen in this position.

02342. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left heel is on the ground with the toes raised. Both knees are braced, the right arm is forced forward in line and level with the waist belt.
- b. The fingers are clenched to form a fist with the thumb forcing down on the index finger, to assist in locking the arm in at the elbow, with the knuckles facing outwards.
- c. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible. The fingers are clenched to form a fist with the thumb forcing down on the index finger, to assist in locking the arm in at the elbow, with knuckles facing outwards.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02343. *Confirm by practice.*

Quick March — Two

02344. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inch) marching pace, bending the knee sufficiently to pass through the correct position of Attention, at the same time alternating the arms. The body is frozen in this position.

02345. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. The right heel is on the ground with the toes raised, both knees are braced.
- b. The left arm is forced forward in line and level with the waist belt, the fingers are clenched to form a fist with the thumb forcing down on the index finger to assist in locking the arm in at the elbow, with the knuckles facing outwards.
- c. The right arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible. The fingers are clenched to form a fist with the thumb forcing down on the index finger to assist in locking the arm in at the elbow with the knuckles facing outwards.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02346. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Quick March — Three

02347. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* The movement is the same as in “Squad Two” only with the left foot and on the execution of the movement the squad will call out “LEFT”.

02348. *Practice: After final collective practice. The instructor is then to step the squad off at the regulation pace of 140 paces to the minute calling out “LEFT — RIGHT — LEFT” for 11 paces at least. Explain:* As “LEFT” is called out it is the left heel that strikes the ground first, the right arm is at the top of its forward swing, level and in line with the waist belt and the left arm is forced fully to the rear as far as physically possible. When “RIGHT” is called out it is the right heel that strikes the ground, the left arm is at the top of its forward swing, level and in line with the waist belt, and the right arm is forced fully to the rear as far as physically possible. *Continue practice then order the squad to “Stand Easy”.*

The Halt

02349. *Explain:* For instructional purposes the Halt movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Squad Halt — One

02350. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “HALTING, BY NUMBERS, SQUAD HALT — ONE!”, at the same time calling “ONE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, as the left heel strikes the ground, a further marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the right foot, at the same time as the arms are alternated. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “CHECK”.

02351. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left toes are on the ground with the heel raised and both knees braced.
- b. The left arm is forced forward in line and level with the shoulder and the right arm is forced to the rear as far as physically possible.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02352. *The squad is to be brought to Attention, the order “Quick March” given and the movement practiced.*

Squad Halt — Two

02353. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward 375 mm (15 inches), placing the foot flat and firmly on the ground, at the same time alternating the arms. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out “ONE”.

02354. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The right toes are on the ground with the heel raised, both knees are braced, the right arm is forced forward in line and level with the waist belt.
- c. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02355. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Squad Halt — Three

02356. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right knee is bent and forced in front of the body, so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground, with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced to the ground to resume the correct position of Attention, at the same time forcing both arms into the side of the body in a scissor-like manner. The body is frozen in this position, after a pause the instructor will adopt the position of At Ease. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO – STOP - OUT”.

02357. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of At Ease, erect and square to the front.

02358. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02359. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of both movements. On the execution of the Halt the squad will call out “CHECK – ONE – TWO – STOP - OUT”. Common faults are:*

- a. *Stepping a pace more or less than 750 mm (30 inches).*
- b. *Not keeping the arms, wrists and hands straight.*

- c. *Not pulling the arms fully to the rear.*
- d. *Allowing the feet to come to the ground with the knee bent.*
- e. *Not swinging the arm in a straight line from front to rear.*

02360. *The squad is to practice the whole movement, once proficient the instructor should advance on to Halting Facing Left and Right using the following word of command and timings:*

Words of Command; "Halt Facing Left/ Right – HALT"

Timing; "CHECK –ONE-TWO – STOP – ONE STOP – TWO STOP – OUT"

Conclusion

02361. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Getting on Parade to be taught in the next lesson.*

02362. – 02369. *Reserved.*



Left Foot Forward



Right Foot Forward

Fig 2-11. Marching in Quick Time



First Position



Second Position

Fig 2-12. Halting in Quick Time

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

GETTING ON PARADE, NUMBERING, PROVING, AND SIZING

Introduction

02370. The procedures described in this section are for the information of instructors at this stage of recruit training. They should be incorporated in lessons depending on squad progress in the basic drill movements taught so far. The movements can be taught within 15 minutes, therefore an instructor should be able to teach them outside of a normal lesson.

Getting on Parade

02371. To practice this movement the squad is to be Standing Easy, in three ranks, in Close Order, with the front rank facing the direction in which they will get on parade. The right guide or right hand man of the front rank acts as the right marker. The commands are:

a. **"RIGHT — MARKER!"**.

(1) On the command **"RIGHT"** the whole squad comes to the 'At Ease' position.

(2) On the command **"MARKER!"** the right marker stands to Attention, marches forward and halts on the fifteenth pace, and stands At Ease.

b. **"GET ON — PARADE!"**.

(1) Both the right marker and the squad stand to Attention. The squad march forward, halt on the fifteenth pace, and stand At Ease. All these movements have the regulation pause between them.

Note: The distance which the squad comes forward may be shortened if there is not enough space.

Numbering and Proving

02372. **Numbering.** A squad will always be 'numbered' from the right in order that a member of it may be addressed as Number of Rank. To achieve this, the command is **"FROM THE RIGHT — NUMBER!"**.

a. Each man in the front rank will call out his number in succession from the right, keeping his head and eyes still.

b. The men in the centre and rear ranks will take the number of their equivalent in the front rank.

- c. If an error in the numbering is made the instructor will call out **“AS YOU WERE!”**, followed by the last correct number given. The soldier so named will call out his number again and the front rank will take up the numbering from him.

Sizing

02373. A body of Riflemen drills better together and gives a better impression to the spectator if it is correctly sized. A recruit squad will be sized early in its training. Level ground should be used for sizing.

02374. A body of Riflemen is sized either *“Tallest on the right, shortest on the left”*, *“Tallest on the left, shortest on the right”* or *“Tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre”*. It is done by forming everyone into a single rank and grading them using the top of the head dress as a guide.

02375. The sequence for *“Tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre”* is:

- a. **“TALLEST ON THE RIGHT, SHORTEST ON THE LEFT, IN SINGLE RANK — SIZE!”**. The squad comes to the position of Attention turn to their right, count the regulation pause and then break off and obey the command. When the instructor has sized everyone into his correct position he will continue.

- b. **“FROM THE RIGHT — NUMBER!”**.

- c. **“ODD NUMBERS ONE PACE FORWARD, EVEN NUMBERS ONE PACE BACKWARDS — MARCH!”**. The instructor must check this movement.

- d. **“STAND STILL THE RIGHT HAND MAN, FRONT RANK TO THE RIGHT, REAR RANK TO THE LEFT, RANKS RIGHT AND LEFT — TURN!”**.

- e. **“FORM THREE RANKS — QUICK MARCH!”**.

(1) The even numbers wheel through 180 degrees and follow the last odd number.

(2) No. 1 remains as right hand man, No. 3 becomes right hand man of the centre rank, No. 5 the right hand man of the rear rank, No. 7 becomes No. 2 of the front rank, etc.

(3) On halting in position each man turns to his front, takes up his own dressing by the right and stands At Ease.

02376. The sequence for *“Tallest on the right, shortest on the left”* remains the same as sub paragraphs a. and b. above but then is:

a. **“STAND STILL THE RIGHT HAND MAN, REMAINDER, RIGHT — TURN!”**.

b. **“FORM THREE RANKS — QUICK MARCH!”**. In this case No. 1 remains the right hand man, No. 2 and No. 3 become right hand men of the centre and rear ranks respectively, No. 4 becomes No. 2 of the front rank, etc.

02377. **Two Ranks.** When a body of troops is about to parade in two ranks but requires three ranks in the preparatory stages, they should be sized in two ranks and then allotted their positions in three ranks, as opposed to being sized in three ranks and then ordered to **“FORM TWO RANKS!”**.

02378. *Reserved.*

LESSON 13. TURNINGS TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT FLANK IN QUICK TIME AND INCLINING

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02379. **Aim.** *To teach Turnings to a Flank in Quick Time, the Right and Left Turn, and Inclining.*

02380. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02381. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02382. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02383. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02384. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02385. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Right and Left Turns in Quick Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the right or left without first being halted, in a smart, uniform manner. *The instructor is to order the squad to "Stand Easy" and then give a demonstration of the left and right turns explaining that the right turn will be taught first finishing with the Inclining.*

The Right Turn

02386. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, RIGHT — TURN!". Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Right Turn — One

02387. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, RIGHT TURN — ONE!", calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command "ONE!" — given on the left foot — a 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the right foot, at the same time swinging the left arm forward and the right arm to the rear. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "FREEZE".*

02388. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right knee braced. The toes of the left foot are on the ground, with the left heel raised.
- b. The left arm is forward, level with the waist belt. The right arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02389. *The squad is to be brought to Attention, the order “Quick March” given and the movement practiced.*

Right Turn — Two

02390. *The instructor will demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, both arms are forced into the side of the body in a smart, scissor-like movement. At the same time, the left leg is bent in front of the body. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO”.

02391. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right knee braced. The left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6 – 8 inches from the ground and the left foot is hanging naturally below the knee.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02392. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Right Turn — Three

02393. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head and eyes, shoulders, body and right foot is forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel. At the same time, the left foot is forced down beside the right. As the left foot contacts with the ground the right foot is forced forward a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches). The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “THREE”.

02394. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. The right foot is just clear of the ground with the toes pointing upward.
- b. Both knees are braced.

- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02395. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Right Turn — Forward

02396. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a further 375 mm (15 inches) to complete a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches). At the same time the left arm is swung forward and the right arm to the rear and the march continues in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FORWARD”.

02397. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The heel of the right foot touches the ground first.
- b. The left arm is swung forward level with the waist belt, the right arm is swung to the rear as far as is physically possible, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 140 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02398. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02399. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad are not required to call out any timings.*

The Left Turn

02400. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Left Turn again and explain:* The movement is the same as for the Right Turn, except that the legs and body movements are opposite, the executive command “**ONE!**” or “**TURN!**” being given as the right foot strikes the ground. *Order the squad to practice and confirm both movements.*

Inclining

02401. *Explain:* This movement enables a squad to turn through 45 degrees. A common fault is lack of dressing. A Left Incline uses the same method as a Left Turn; a Right Incline the same as a Right Turn. The executive words of command are “**DIAGONAL MARCH, LEFT/RIGHT — INCLINE!**”.

02402. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02403. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the About Turn movement to be taught in the next lesson.*

02404. - 02409. *Reserved.*



Second Position



Third Position

Fig 2-13. Right Turn in Quick Time

LESSON 14. THE ABOUT TURN IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02410. **Aim.** *To teach the About Turn in Quick Time.*

02411. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02412. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02413. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02414. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02415. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02416. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the About Turn in Quick Time. The reason the movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to turn through an angle of 180 degrees without first being halted, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

About Turn in Quick Time

02417. *The instructor will demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, ABOUT — TURN!", at the same time calling out "CHECK — T — L — V — FORWARD" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching as you demonstrate each part.*

About Turn — One

02418. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, ABOUT TURN — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command "ONE!", which is given as the left heel strikes the ground, a further 750 mm (30 inch- es) pace is taken with the right foot, at the same time alternating the arms. A short pace of 375 mm (15 inches) is then taken with the right foot, at the same time forcing the arms into the side of the body in a sharp, scissor-like movement. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "CHECK — IN".

02419. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. The right heel is against and touching the left instep.
- c. Both knees are braced.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02420. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

About Turn — Two

02421. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, eyes, shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel. At the same time, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6 - 8 inches from the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground beside the right. The body is then frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “T”.

02422. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 45 degrees, front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02423. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

About Turn — One (Combination)

02424. *Explain:* For ease and simplicity of instruction, ‘About Turn — One’ and ‘Squad Two’ are combined to form a new ‘About Turn — One’. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate the combined movement.*

02425. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “TURNINGS, ABOUT TURN — ONE!”, at the same time calling out “T” as the movement is executed. Explain:* On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “T”.

02426. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

About Turn — Two

02427. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and left foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right (completing a full 180 degrees turn) by means of pivoting on the left heel. At the same time, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is forced down beside the left. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “L”.

02428. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The body is now facing its new direction. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 45 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02429. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

About Turn — Three

02430. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body, so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground beside the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “V”.

02431. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02432. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

About Turn — Forward

02433. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace. At the same time, the left arm is swung forward and the right arm is swung to the rear whilst continuing to march in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FORWARD”.

02434. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right heel strikes the ground first and the left arm is swung forward level and in line with the waist.
- b. The right arm is swung to the rear as far as is physically possible whilst marching at the regulation rate of 140 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02435. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02436. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of the movement the squad will call out “CHECK — T — L — V — FORWARD”.*

02437. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02438. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Change Step in Quick Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02439. - 02449. *Reserved.*



First Position



Second Position

Fig 2-14. About Turn in Quick Time

LESSON 15. THE CHANGE STEP IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02450. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Step in Quick Time.*

02451. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02452. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02453. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02454. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02455. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02456. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Change Step in Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to regain a lost step in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Change Step

02457. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, CHANGE — STEP!", at the same time calling out "LEFT — RIGHT — LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Change Step — One

02458. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE STEP — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right heel strikes the ground, a full 750 mm (30 inch- es) pace is taken with the left foot, at the same time alternating the arms. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02459. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the left knee braced. The right toes are on the ground, the heel raised.

- b. The right arm is forward, level and in line with the waist. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02460. *The squad is given the order “Quick March” and the movement practiced.*

Change Step — Two

02461. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground, with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. At the same time, the arms are forced into the side of the body in a sharp, scissor-like motion and the right foot is forced down behind the left foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement, which is carried out in double time, the squad will call out “RIGHT”.

02462. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the right instep against and touching the left heel.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02463. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Change Step — Three

02464. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace. At the same time, the right arm is swung forward and the left arm forced to the rear and the march in Quick Time is continued. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “LEFT”.

02465. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first and the right arm is swung forward level with the waist belt.
- b. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 140 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02466. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02467. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT — RIGHT — LEFT". A common fault is not to return the arms to the sides in the second movement.*

02468. **Note.** *Explain:* The words of command "CHANGE — STEP!" are given on consecutive left and right feet; "CHANGE" on the left and "STEP" on the right.

02469. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02470. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Marking Time and Halting to be taught in the next lesson.*

02471. - 02479. *Reserved.*



Second Position

Fig 2-15. Change Step in Quick Time

LESSON 16. MARKING TIME IN QUICK TIME AT THE HALT — HALTING FROM MARKING TIME IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02480. **Aim.** *To teach Marking Time in Quick Time at the Halt and to Halt from Quick Mark Time.*

02481. **Timings.** *One 10 minute period.*

02482. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02483. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02484. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02485. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02486. **Explain:** *The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Mark Time at the Halt in Quick Time and the Halt from Marking Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to remain in the same position whilst on the march. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Mark Time in Quick Time at the Halt and the Halt

02487. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "MARK — TIME!", "SQUAD — HALT!". Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Quick Mark — Time

02488. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARK — TIME!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The foot is then lowered to the ground. As the left leg takes the weight of the body, the right leg is bent and the instructor continues to mark time in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out any timings.*

02489. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left leg is bent first whilst marking time at the regulation rate of 140 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02490. *Adopt the position of Attention and confirm by practice.*

Halt from Mark Time

02491. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — HALT!". Explain: Immediately on the command, which is given as the left knee is at its highest point, the left foot is lowered to the ground, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6 – 8 inches from the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced to the ground beside the left. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.*

02492. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced to assume the position of Attention'. Pause, and then stand At Ease.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02493. *The squad is to be given the order "Quick Mark Time" and the movement practiced.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02494. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement reminding the squad that it does not call out.*

02495. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02496. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Marking Time and Halting and Forward in Quick Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02497. – 02499. *Reserved.*

LESSON 17. MARKING TIME IN QUICK TIME — FORWARD FROM MARKING TIME IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02500. **Aim.** *To teach the Mark Time in Quick Time and Forward from Marking Time.*

02501. **Timings.** *One 15 minute period.*

02502. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02503. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02504. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02505. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02506. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Mark Time and Forward in Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to Mark Time and then continue marching in Quick Time in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Mark Time and Forward

02507. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "MARK TIME!" "FORWARD!". Explain:* For instructional purposes these movements are taught by demonstration and explanation. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

The Mark Time

02508. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARK — TIME!", at the same time calling out "TIME" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right heel strikes the ground, a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot, at the same time alternating the arms. A short pace of 150 mm (6 inches) is then taken with the right, at the same time forcing the arms into the side of the body in a sharp, scissor-like motion. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "IN".

02509. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. The right heel is against and touching the left instep.
- c. The knees are braced.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02510. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

Mark Time — Two

02511. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”.* *Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot come 6-8 inches from the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then lowered to the ground, toes touching first. As the left foot takes the weight of the body the right leg is bent in front and the instructor continues to mark time in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02512. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left leg is bent first whilst marking time at the regulation rate of 140 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02513. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Forward

02514. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “FORWARD!”.* *Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is received as the left knee is at its highest point, on the next right foot, the foot is forced to the ground beside the left foot. As the right foot strikes the ground the left foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace. The right arm is swung forward and the left arm is swung to the rear and the march in Quick Time continues. The squad will not call out.

02515. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is forced to the ground. The left foot takes the first 750 mm (30 inches) pace.
- b. The right arm is swung forward and level and in line with the waist. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.

- c. Whilst marching the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02516. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02517. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements reminding the squad that it does not call out.*

02518. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02519. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Change Step to be taught in the next lesson.*

02520. – 02529. *Reserved.*

LESSON 18. CHANGING STEP WHILST MARKING TIME AT THE HALT IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02530. **Aim.** *To teach Changing Step Whilst Marking Time at the Halt in Slow and Quick Time.*

02531. **Timings.** *One 15 minute period.*

02532. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02533. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02534. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02535. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02536. **Explain:** *The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Change Step Whilst Marking Time at the Halt in Slow and Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to regain a lost step whilst marking time, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Change Step Whilst Marking Time

02537. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "MARK TIME, CHANGING STEP, CHANGE — STEP!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught by demonstration and explanation. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

Change Step

02538. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement in Slow time, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, CHANGE — STEP!", at the same time calling out "STEP" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, which is given on consecutive left and right feet, the instructor marks time with the LEFT leg twice then continues to mark time as normal. On the execution of the movement the squad will call out "LEFT — LEFT — RIGHT".*

02539. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. It is the left leg that is bent twice whilst marking time at the regulation rate.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02540. *The squad is to be given the order "Quick March Time".*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02541. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements reminding the squad to call out "LEFT — LEFT — RIGHT" in Quick Time.*

02542. **Note.** *Explain:* The words of command "**CHANGE — STEP!**" are given on consecutive left and right feet, "**CHANGE**" on the left and "**STEP**" on the right.

02543. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02544. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Marching and Halting to be taught in the next lesson.*

02545. - 02549. *Reserved.*

LESSON 19. MARCHING AND HALTING IN DOUBLE TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02550. **Aim.** *To teach Marching and Halting in Double Time.*

02551. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02552. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02553. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02554. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02555. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02556. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn Marching and Halting in Double Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to march at the regulation rate of 180 paces per minute and to halt in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Marching and Halting in Double Time

02557. *The instructor is to demonstrate both complete movements, giving the words of command "DOUBLE — MARCH!", at the same time calling out "ONE STOP — ONE — TWO — THREE — FOUR", for 11 paces. The instructor is then to halt, at the same time calling out "CHECK — ONE TWO STOP - OUT!" as the movement is being executed. Explain:* Dealing firstly with Marching in Double Time. For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Double March

02558. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement giving the words of command "BY THE LEFT - DOUBLE - MARCH!". Explain:* Immediately on the word of command, "**MARCH!**" come to 'Attention', step off with the left foot, 'Double' (Prancing like a horse) on the toes with easy strides, inclining the body slightly forward, but maintaining its correct carriage.

02559. The feet are to be picked up cleanly from the ground at each pace, and the thigh, knees and ankle joints are all to work freely without stiffness. The whole body is to be carried forward by a thrust of the rear foot without unnecessary effort.

02560. The heels are not to be raised above the seat or brought back as if running, but the feet carried straight to the front and the toes placed lightly on the ground.

02561. The arms are to swing easily from the shoulders and are to be bent at the elbow, backs of the hands outwards and in a clenched fist, arms swinging across the chest to the opposite shoulder and back to the chest pocket with the elbow forced backwards, tight but clear of the body to allow full freedom of the chest. *Common faults are:*

- a. Swinging the shoulders.
- b. Looking down.
- c. Stepping too long at the head of the squad.
- d. Running on the heels and loss of dressing.

02562. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The shoulders are to be kept steady and square to the front with head erect.
- b. The length of the pace is to be 40 inches and the rate of the double is 180 paces to the minute. The double is to be in rhythm with and in time of the Regimental Double March played by The Band and Bugles of The Rifles.
- c. Timing. “**1,2,3,4 - 1,2,3,4!**”.

02563. *Confirm by practice.*

Squad Halt

02564. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement giving the words of command “**SQUAD - HALT!**”. Explain:* The “**HALT!**” is the same timing as for in quick time, given on the left foot. Immediately on the words of command, “**SQUAD - HALT!**” a check pace is taken with the right foot followed by a further half pace with the left foot. The right foot is then raised 6-8 inches and brought into the left to assume the position of ‘Attention’, the arms are brought to the side of the body in a scissor-like manner on the last movement of the right foot, after a regulation pause, stand ‘At Ease’, calling the timing “**CHECK – ONE TWO STOP - OUT!**”.

02565. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02566. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of both movements. On the execution of the Halt the squad will call out "CHECK – ONE – TWO – STOP - OUT". Common faults are:*

- a. *Stepping a pace more or less than the regulation pace.*
- b. *Not keeping the arms, and wrists close to the body.*
- c. *Allowing the feet to come to the ground with the knee bent.*

02567. *The squad is to practice the whole movement, once proficient the instructor should advance on to Halting Facing Left and Right using the following word of command and timings:*

Words of Command; "Halt Facing Left/ Right – HALT"

Timing; "CHECK – ONE-TWO – STOP – ONE STOP – TWO STOP – OUT"

Conclusion

02568. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary.*

02569. - 02579. *Reserved.*



Second Position



Third Position

Fig 2-16. Marching in Double Time

LESSON 20. BREAKING IN TO QUICK TIME FROM THE DOUBLE TIME AND DOUBLE TIME FROM THE QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02580. **Aim.** *To teach Breaking in to the Quick Time from the Double, and Double from the Quick Time.*

02581. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02582. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02583. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02584. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02585. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02586. **Explain:** *The next stage in foot drill is to learn to break in to the Quick Time from the Double and Double from the Quick Time Marching. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to move between the two regulation rates of 180 and 140 paces per minute in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Breaking into Double Time from the Quick Time

02587. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement giving the words of command "BREAK INTO DOUBLE TIME - DOUBLE - MARCH!". Explain: The "MARCH!" is given on the left foot. Immediately on the words of command, "BREAK INTO DOUBLE TIME - DOUBLE - MARCH!" take a full pace with the right foot and start the new time with the left foot as described above.*

02588. *Confirm by practice.*

Breaking into the Quick Time from the Double Time

02589. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement giving the words of command "BREAK INTO QUICK TIME - QUICK - MARCH!". Explain: The "MARCH!" is given on the left foot. Immediately on the words of command, "BREAK INTO QUICK TIME - QUICK - MARCH!" take a check pace with the right foot, at the same time bringing the arms down to the side, and continue marching in 'Quick Time', 140 paces to the minute leading with the left foot.*

02590. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02591. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of both movements.*

Conclusion

02592. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary.*

02593. - 02599. *Reserved.*

LESSON 21. MARCHING AND HALTING IN SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02600. **Aim.** *To teach Marching and Halting in Slow Time.*

02601. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02602. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02603. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02604. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02605. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02606. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn Marching and Halting in Slow Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to march at the regulation rate of 65 paces per minute in Slow Time and to halt in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Marching and Halting in Slow Time

02607. *The instructor is to demonstrate both complete movements, giving the words of command "SLOW — MARCH!", at the same time calling out the correct rate of march, "LEFT — RIGHT — LEFT" for 11 paces. The instructor is then to give the command "SQUAD — HALT!", calling out "ONE TWO" on the last two movements of the Halt. Explain:* Both movements are taught in two parts, first marching in Slow Time. For instructional purposes the movement is taught by balanced step. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

Slow March — One

02608. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SLOW MARCH, BY BALANCED STEP, LEFT FOOT — FRONT!", at the same time calling out "FRONT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches). The body is frozen in this position.

02609. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left foot is just clear of the ground with the toes pointing downwards and outwards.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02610. *Confirm by questions.*

Left Foot — Forward

02611. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “LEFT FOOT — FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a further 375 mm (15 inches) to complete a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace with the left foot. The body is frozen in this position.

02612. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the foot touches the ground first. The left foot is then flat and firm on the ground, the left knee braced.
- b. The toes of the right foot are on the ground with the right heel raised.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02613. *Confirm by questions.*

Right Foot — Forward

02614. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “RIGHT FOOT — FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “RIGHT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a full marching 750 mm (30 inches) pace, bending the knee sufficiently to allow the foot to pass through the correct position of Attention.

02615. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the right foot touches the ground first. The right foot is now flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The right knee is braced, the toes of the left foot are on the ground with the left heel raised.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

Left Foot — Forward

02616. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “LEFT FOOT — FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full marching 750 mm (30 inches) pace, bending the knee sufficiently to allow the foot to pass through the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FRONT — FORWARD — RIGHT — LEFT”.

02617. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the left foot touches the ground first. The left foot is then flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The left knee is braced, the toes of the right foot are on the ground with the right heel raised.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02618. *Confirm by questions then turn the squad to the left, and from the position of Attention practice.*

Combination

02619. *The instructor is to step the squad off at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute. Explain:* As the instructor calls out “LEFT”, the squad must ensure the outside edge of the left foot touches the ground. As the instructor calls out “RIGHT”, the squad must ensure the outside edge of their right foot touches the ground for at least 11 paces.

02620. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

The Halt

02621. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — HALT!”, at the same time calling out “ONE TWO” on the last two movements of the Halt. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the left foot passes the right, the left foot completes a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches), and is placed flat and firm on the ground. The right knee is then bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6 – 8 inches from the ground, the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down to the ground to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of the last two movements of the Halt the squad will call out “ONE TWO”.

02622. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of Attention, and is held erect and square to the front.

02623. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

Final Demonstration of Both the Complete Movements

02624. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements reminding the squad that it must call out "ONE TWO". Common faults are:*

- a. Leaning back and not being able to adopt the correct position with the feet, i.e., outside of the boot touching the ground first.*
- b. Allowing the arms and fists to slacken, thus not assuming the correct position of Attention.*

02625. *Confirm by questions then practice.*

Conclusion

02626. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. Summary. To include Turnings in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02627. - 02629. *Reserved.*



First Position



Second Position

Fig 2-17. Marching in Slow Time - Left Foot

LESSON 22. TURNINGS TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT FLANK IN SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02630. **Aim.** *To teach the Right and Left Turn in Slow Time.*

02631. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02632. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02633. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02634. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02635. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02636. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Right and Left Turns in Slow Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the right or left without first being halted, in a smart, uniform manner. The right turn will be taught first. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Right Turn

02637. *The instructor will demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, RIGHT — TURN!". Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Right Turn — One

02638. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, RIGHT TURN — ONE!", at the same time calling out "FREEZE" on the execution of the movement. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right foot passes the left, the right foot completes its full marching 750 mm (30 inches) pace. The left leg is bent in front of the body. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "FREEZE".

02639. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right knee braced. The left knee is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6 – 8 inches from the ground and the foot hanging naturally below the knee.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02640. *Confirm by questions then bring the squad to Attention, turn right and practise.*

Right Turn — Two

02641. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head and shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees, by means of pivoting on the right heel. At the same time, the left foot is forced down to the ground beside the right foot. As the left foot contacts the ground the right foot is forced forward a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches). The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO”.

02642. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground with the left knee braced.
- b. The right foot is just clear of the ground with the toes pointing downwards and outwards.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02643. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Right Turn — Forward

02644. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a further 375 mm (15 inches), thereby completing a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace and marching in slow time continues.

02645. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. It was the outside edge of the right foot which touched the ground first, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02646. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Right Turn Movement

02647. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement reminding the squad that now they are not required to call out.*

The Left Turn

02648. *The instructor is now to teach and practice the squad in the Left Turn, using the opposite leg and body movements.*

02649. *Confirm by questions then practice both movements.*

Conclusion

02650. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the About Turn in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02651. - 02659. *Reserved.*



First Position



Second Position

Fig 2-18. Right Turn in Slow Time

LESSON 23. THE ABOUT TURN IN SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02660. **Aim.** *To teach the About Turn in Slow Time.*

02661. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02662. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02663. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02664. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02665. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02666. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the About Turn in Slow Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to turn through an angle of 180 degrees to the right, without first being halted, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The About Turn

02667. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, ABOUT — TURN!", at the same time calling out "ONE STOP — TWO STOP — THREE STOP — FORWARD" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

About Turn — One

02668. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, ABOUT TURN — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right foot passes the left, the right foot completes a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches). The head, shoulders, body and right foot are then forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel. At the same time, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground, with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground beside the right foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out "ONE STOP".

02669. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line front, centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02670. *Confirm by questions then form up the squad ready to Slow March to the left and practice.*

About Turn — Two

02671. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and left foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right (completing the full 180 degrees turn) by means of pivoting on the left heel. At the same time, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down to the ground beside the left foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO STOP”.

02672. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The body is facing its new direction.
- b. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 30 degrees front, centre of the body.
- c. Both knees are braced. d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02673. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

About Turn — Three

02674. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6 – 8 inches from the ground, with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down beside the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “THREE STOP”.

02675. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees to the front, centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02676. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

About Turn — Forward

02677. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace and the March in Slow Time is continued. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FORWARD”.

02678. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the right boot touches the ground first, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02679. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02680. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement reminding the squad that they have to call out “ONE STOP — TWO STOP — THREE STOP — FORWARD”.*

02681. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02682. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Change Step in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02683. - 02689. *Reserved.*

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

INCLINING AND WHEELING IN SLOW AND QUICK TIME

Inclining

02690. **Execution.** This movement enables a squad to march diagonally without losing its formation. The order “**DIAGONAL MARCH, LEFT — INCLINE!**” is given as the right foot passes the left. There is no need to teach this initially by numbers. The squad will turn through 45 degrees using the same method as in the Left Turn.

02691. **Common Fault.** The most common fault is a loss of dressing.

Wheeling in Slow and Quick Time

02692. **Introduction.** Wheeling is a method by which a body of Riflemen with a frontage of not more than six ranks or files, may change direction, whilst retaining dressing within those ranks or files. The order “**RIGHT — WHEEL!**” is given over one complete pace. The squad are to act as follows:

- a. The right hand man of the leading rank or file will change direction through 90 degrees on the circumference of a circle with a radius of about 600 mm (24 inches). He must regulate his length of pace to allow those to his left to change direction without losing dressing.
- b. Those to his left change direction through 90 degrees by lengthening their pace, without losing their interval or dressing.
- c. Those behind the leading rank or file will follow on covering the same ground as them.

02693. **Common Faults.** These are:

- a. Those behind the leading rank or file not covering the same ground as them.
- b. Slovenly arm swinging among the inner men.
- c. A tendency to increase the rate of marching among the outer men.

02694. **Variations.** The following should be noted:

- a. If the body of Riflemen is halted or ordered to mark time when only part of its number have wheeled, those who have not wheeled will immediately cover off those who have.
- b. If the wheel is to be through more than 90 degrees, the word of command will be given a second time; if through less than 90 degrees, the word of command “**FORWARD!**” will be given.

Squad Instruction

02695. *These movements may be incorporated in the lessons at a time judged to be suitable by the instructor.*

02696. *Reserved.*

LESSON 24. CHANGE STEP IN SLOW TIME ON THE MARCH

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02697. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Step in Slow Time.*

02698. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02699. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02700. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02701. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02702. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02703. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Change Step in Slow Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to regain a lost step in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Change Step

02704. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, CHANGE — STEP!", at the same time calling out "LEFT — RIGHT — LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.

Change Step — One

02705. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE STEP — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right foot contacts the ground, a 750 mm (30 inch- es) pace is taken with the left foot placing the foot flat and firm on the ground. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02706. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the left knee braced.
- b. The right toes are on the ground, the heel raised.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02707. *Confirm by questions then Slow March and practice.*

Change Step — Two

02708. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground, with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down behind the left foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement, which is carried out in Quick Time, the squad will call out “RIGHT”.

02709. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. The right instep is against and touching the left heel, both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02710. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Change Step — Three

02711. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace to continue the march in Slow Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “LEFT”.

02712. **Points to Note.** The outside edge of the left foot touches the ground first, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.

02713. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02714. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. Remind the squad they are to call out “LEFT — RIGHT — LEFT” and that common faults are not taking a 750 mm (30 inches) pace with the left foot and failing to bend the knee quickly enough.*

02715. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

02716. **Note.** *Explain:* The words of command “**CHANGE — STEP!**” are given on consecutive left and right feet, “**CHANGE**” on the left and “**STEP**” on the right.

Conclusion

02717. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Marking Time and Halting in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02718. - 02729. *Reserved.*



First Position



Second Position

Fig 2-19. Change Step in Slow Time

LESSON 25. MARKING TIME AND HALTING FROM MARKING TIME IN SLOW TIME AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02730. **Aim.** *To teach Marking Time in Slow Time from the Halt and Halting from Marking Time in Slow Time at the Halt.*

02731. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02732. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02733. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02734. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02735. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02736. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drills is to learn the Mark Time in Slow Time at the Halt and Halting Whilst Marking Time at the Halt. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to remain in the same position whilst on the march and to halt when commanded in a smart, uniform manner. *Dealing firstly with Mark Time, order the Squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Mark Time

02737. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARK — TIME!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then lowered to the ground beside the right. When the left foot is flat and firm on the ground the same action is carried out with the right foot. The individual continues to mark time in Slow Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02738. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left leg is bent first, the toes of the feet touch the ground first when lowering the leg.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02739. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

The Halt

02740. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — HALT!”. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is received as the left foot strikes the ground, the right foot is forced down beside the left foot to assume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02741. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02742. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02743. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements.*

02744. **Note.** *Explain:* If marching to music the right foot is not forced down on the halt, but lowered in time to the music.

02745. *Confirm by practice.*

Conclusion

02746. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the next lesson in Marking Time.*

02747. - 02749. *Reserved.*

LESSON 26. MARKING TIME IN SLOW TIME AND FORWARD FROM MARKING TIME IN SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02750. **Aim.** *To teach Marking Time in Slow Time and Forward from Marking Time in Slow Time.*

02751. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02752. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02753. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02754. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02755. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02756. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Mark Time from Slow Time and Forward from Mark Time in Slow Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to Mark Time in Slow Time and to continue the march in Slow Time on the word of command "**FORWARD!**" in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Mark Time and Forward

02757. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movements, giving the words of command "**MARK — TIME!**" "**FORWARD!**". Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught first by demonstration and explanation. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

Mark Time

02758. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**MARK — TIME!**", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march when marking time. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given over the complete right pace, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The foot is then lowered in time to the rate of march. The right leg is then bent in front of the body and the Mark Time continues. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02759. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left leg is bent in front of the body first whilst marking time, at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02760. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

Forward

02761. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "FORWARD!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march when stepping off. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is received as the left foot strikes the ground, the right foot is forced down to the ground beside the left. As the foot strikes the ground, the left foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace and the march in Slow Time continues. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02762. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is forced to the ground whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02763. *Confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02764. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements reminding the squad that it does not call not.*

02765. **Note. Explain:** If marching to music the right foot is not forced to the ground on "Forward" but moved in time to the music.

02766. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02767. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02768. - 02779. *Reserved.*

LESSON 27. BREAKING INTO SLOW TIME FROM QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02780. **Aim.** *To teach Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time.*

02781. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02782. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02783. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02784. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02785. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02786. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to Break into Slow Time from Quick Time in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Break into Slow Time

02787. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "BREAK INTO SLOW TIME, SLOW — MARCH!". Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Break into Slow Time — One

02788. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "BREAK INTO SLOW TIME, SLOW MARCH — ONE!", at the same time calling out "FREEZE" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, which is received as the right heel strikes the ground, a 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot, at the same time alternating the arms. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "FREEZE".*

02789. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. The right toes are on the ground, heel raised.

- b. The right arm is forward, level with the waist belt. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02790. *Order the squad to Quick March and confirm by practice.*

Break into Slow Time — Two

02791. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down behind the left foot. The arms are forced into the side of the body in a sharp, scissor-like motion. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".

02792. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, the right instep is against and touching the left heel. Both knees are braced.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02793. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Squad — Forward

02794. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FORWARD!", at the same time calling out "FORWARD" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full marching pace, pointing the toes downwards and outwards and the march in Slow Time is commenced. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "FORWARD".

02795. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the left foot touches the ground first, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02796. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02797. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement, reminding the squad that now they do not call out.*

02798. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02799. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02800. - 02809. *Reserved.*

LESSON 28. BREAKING INTO QUICK TIME FROM SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02810. **Aim.** *To teach Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time.*

02811. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02812. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02813. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02814. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02815. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02816. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Break into Quick Time from Slow Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to break into Quick Time from Slow Time in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Break into Quick Time

02817. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "BREAK INTO QUICK TIME, QUICK — MARCH!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march when stepping off. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught by demonstration and explanation. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

Break into Quick Time, Quick — March

02818. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "BREAK INTO QUICK TIME, QUICK — MARCH!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march when stepping off in Quick Time. Explain: Immediately on the command, which is received on consecutive left and right feet, a 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot, forcing the left heel into the ground. At the same time, the right arm is swung forward and the left arm to the rear and the march in Quick Time continues. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.*

02819. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first.
- b. The right arm is swung forward, level with the waist belt.. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as physically possible whilst marching at the regulation rate of 140 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02820. *Confirm by questions then order Slow March and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02821. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement, reminding the squad that now they do not call out.*

02822. **Note.** *The words of command are given as follows “BREAK — INTO — QUICK — TIME”, given on consecutive left and right feet, starting on the left foot. There is then a pause of four full marching paces followed by “QUICK — MARCH!”, given on consecutive left and right feet. The instructor must call out the regulation rate of march immediately the first left heel strikes the ground in Quick Time.*

02823. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02824. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the movements to be revised in the next lesson, as decided by the instructor.*

CHAPTER 3

RIFLE EXERCISES

INTRODUCTION

General

0301. The arms drill for the rifle L85A2 has been devised following five basic principles:

- a. The drill must be the same for all three Services, excluding minor regimental variations.
- b. The rifle must be ready for use: for example, the sight should not be removed.
- c. The rifle has to be sustainable during long parades by all servicemen: hence positions adopted have to be comfortable and relieve the weight of the rifle at appropriate times.
- d. The drill should cause as little damage to uniforms and medals as possible.
- e. The drill should be smart and safe.

0302. The arms drill has been developed for use with the rifle fitted with the iron or optic (SUSAT or LDS) sight.

0303. For inspections, soldiers should be at the position of Attention. It should be borne in mind that it is difficult to retain the L85A2 rifle fitted with the iron sight at the shoulder for long periods.

0304. Because of the size and weight of the rifle, frequent 'change arms' will be necessary both at the halt and on the march, at the discretion of the parade commander.

0305. When the rifle is carried across the body with the sling (for instance a tactical sentry within barracks), compliments should be paid by saluting with the hand.

Exercises for the Rifle L85A2

0306. This chapter contains the rifle exercises for the rifle L85A2, as far as possible laid out in the order of priority. The exercises to be taught are laid down in the Common Military Syllabus. Commanding Officers may use their discretion as to how many of the other rifle exercises are taught. Those exercises used solely on funeral duty are in Chapter 9.

0307. All rifle exercises are first taught by numbers and then by judging the regulation pause between movements. The word of command for movements judging the time will be as for numbers, but **“ARMS!”** becomes the executive, e.g., **“SHOULDER ARMS — SQUAD ONE!”** becomes **“SHOULDER — ARMS!”**.

0308. Good rifle drill is a combination of the following:

- a. Sharp, decisive handling of the rifle.
- b. No fidgeting between movements.
- c. Keeping the upper arm and elbow close to the body throughout.
- d. Control of the rifle during all movements.

0309. When the rifle is described as being vertical it is the barrel, not the butt, which is vertical.

0310. - 0319. *Reserved.*

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 1. POSITIONS OF ATTENTION, STAND AT EASE AND STAND EASY WITH THE RIFLE AT THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0320. **Aim.** *To teach the positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy with the rifle at the Shoulder.*
0321. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*
0322. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0323. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
0324. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0325. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
0326. **Squad Formation.** *Position the squad in a half circle, At Ease, with their rifles held in both hands across the body, parallel to the ground. This position from now on is referred to as the 'Relax' position.*
0327. **Revision.** *Nil.*

Introduction

0328. **Explain:** *To introduce rifle exercises the positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy are taught first. These movements enable an individual or body of Riflemen to form a base, from which all future rifle exercises can originate in a smart and uniform manner. The position of Attention is taught first. Order the squad to watch your demonstration.*

The Position of Attention (see Fig 3-1)

0329. **The instructor is to demonstrate the position of Attention. Explain:** *In the correct position, force the rifle to the rear in the right shoulder, with the magazine square to the front, whilst ensuring the thumb of the right hand is in line with the seam of the trousers. Other points to note are:*
- a. *Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line front centre of the body.*

- b. Both knees are braced; the right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the thumb curled around the front. The right arm is fully extended with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Common faults are the rifle not forced back into the shoulder and the barrel tipping forward.

0330. *Confirm by questions and practice first by ordering the squad to adopt the correct position of Attention with the rifle. At the end of the practice the squad is to readopt the Relax position.*

The Stand at Ease from the Attention (see Fig 3-2)

0331. *The squad is to be in the Relax position. The instructor is to demonstrate the Stand at Ease from the Attention, calling out "ONE STOP" as he does so. Explain: Immediately on the command "**STAND AT — EASE!**", the left leg is bent in front of the body, with the foot hanging naturally below the knee at 6-8 inches from the ground. The left foot is then forced to the ground at a distance of 150 mm (6-8 inches) to the left of the right foot and the body is frozen in this position. Other points to note are:*

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, heels approximately 30 mm (12 inches) apart with both knees braced.
- b. The rifle, right and left arms do not move throughout the execution of this movement, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

0332. *Confirm by questions and practice with the squad calling out "ONE STOP" on each movement. End the practice with the squad in the Stand at Ease position.*

The Stand Easy (see Fig 3-3)

0333. *The squad is to be in the Relax position. The instructor is to demonstrate the Stand Easy position giving the word of command "**STAND — EASY!**". Explain: the rifle is forced into the vertical position by bring the butt forward. At the same time the left hand comes across the front of the body and strikes and grasps the hand guard above the trigger guard with the little finger just touching the trigger guard, the thumb is vertical and to the side of the hand guard. After a pause, the weapon is then rotated to a position parallel to the ground with both arms fully extended, the left hand under the hand guard and the back of the left hand towards the body, fingers forward and the thumb running along the outside of the rifle towards the muzzle. The right hand releases slightly and is re-positioned forward of the butt with the back of the hand facing forward. The hands are to be slightly more than the body's width apart.*

0334. On the word of command both arms are brought forward in a graceful quarter circle movement and not forced, as this could cause the rifle to fall forward. The hands meet in the centre of the body so that the palm of the left hand has covered the back of the right hand. The rifle is positioned across the body with the magazine facing to the left, whilst the remainder of the body is relaxed and remains still in this position. Other points to note are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, heels 300 mm (12 inches) apart with both knees braced.
- b. The rifle is positioned across the centre of the body with the magazine facing down. The left hand has a full grasp of the stock, fingers and thumb together. The right hand releases slightly and is re-positioned forward of the butt with the back of the hand facing forward. The remainder of the body is relaxed and still.
- c. Common faults are moving the feet and fidgeting after completion of the movement.

0335. *Confirm by questions and practice. End the practice with the squad in the Stand Easy position.*

Stand Ready

0336. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement of 'Stand Ready' giving the words of command "STAND - READY!". Explain: Immediately on the word of command, "READY!" the body is braced up into the position of 'At Ease' by raising the head. The weight of the body is to be evenly balanced over both feet, which are to be at an angle of 30 degrees. The rifle remains parallel to the ground. The body is frozen in this position.*

Attention from the Stand at Ease

0337. *The squad is to be in the Relax position. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLES — Parade!". Explain: On the command, the left leg is raised 6-8 inches from the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. It is then forced down beside the right foot to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. Other points to note are:*

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, heels 300 mm (12 inches) apart at an angle of 30 degrees from a line, front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced, and the rifle and left arm do not move throughout the movement. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

- c. The squad is to call out “ONE STOP” on the execution of the movement.

0338. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0339. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of all the movements and then to practice the squad for the remainder of the period.*

Conclusion

0340. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*

- b. *Safety precautions.*

- c. *Summary. To include the following:*

- (1) The importance of these basic movements as the foundation of further arms drill.

- (2) The squad to always call out “ONE STOP” when coming to the position of attention and “OUT” when standing at ease.

- (3) A look forward to the Change Arms at the Shoulder to be taught in the next lesson.

0341. - 0349. *Reserved.*



Fig 3-1. Position of Attention at the Shoulder



Fig 3-2. Stand at Ease



Fig 3-3. Stand Easy

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 2. THE CHANGE ARMS AT THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0350. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Arms at the Shoulder.*
0351. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*
0352. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0353. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
0354. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0355. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
0356. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a hollow square.*
0357. **Revision.** *Revise the positions taught in the previous lesson.*

Introduction

0358. *Explain:* The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the Change Arms at the Shoulder. The movement is taught to enable an individual or a body of Riflemen to rest a limb or to provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart, uniform manner. The change from the right to the left shoulder is taught first. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Change Arms

0359. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Change Arms, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, CALLING OUT THE TIME, CHANGE — ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Change Arms — Squad One

0360. The instructor is to brief that the position of Attention should be carried out as previously taught points to note are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced, the right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the thumb curled around the front. The right arm is fully extended with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Common faults are the rifle not forced back into the shoulder and the barrel tipping forward.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "ONE STOP".

Change Arms — Squad Two

0361. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS — SQUAD TWO!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle into the front centre of the body with the right hand. At the same time the left hand comes across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grip the stock, just above the trigger guard. The body is then frozen in this position.

0362. *Points to Note.* These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical and approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the front centre of the body, with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right arm is at its fullest extent, with the right hand retaining its grip on the butt plate, the right wrist, forearm and elbow is forced well into the body.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock just above the trigger guard with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well into the body.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "Left".

0363. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

Change Arms — Squad Three

0364. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, then calling out “LEFT”. Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the right hand and force it up the side of the rifle by the shortest route, to strike, seize and grip the stock just above the left hand and then freeze in this position.

0365. *Points to Note.* These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the stock with the little finger of the right hand touching the index finger of the left hand. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “LEFT”

0366. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Change Arms — Squad Four

0367. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — FOUR!”, then calling out “LEFT”. Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the left hand and at the same time force the rifle by the shortest route to the vertical position on the left side. Strike, seize and grip the base of the butt plate with the left hand and freeze in this position.

0368. *Points to Note.* These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the vertical position on the left side of the body.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out “LEFT”.

0369. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Change Arms — Squad Five

0370. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — FIVE!”, then calling out “LEFT”. Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the right hand, force it across the body by the shortest route to resume the position of Attention. At the same time, force the rifle back into the left side and freeze in this position.

0371. *Points to Note.* These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms on the left side of the body.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "LEFT".

0372. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Halt — Squad Six

0373. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — SIX!" at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, you are to stand at ease with the rifles as previously taught and freeze in this position.*

0374. *Points to Note.* These are:

- a. The correct position of stood at ease has now been resumed.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out "LEFT".

0375. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0376. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out "ONE STOP — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT", etc., only moving on the "LEFTS AND STAYING PERFECTLY STILL ON THE RIGHTS". The squad is to practice the complete movement, calling the time at the regulation rate.*

Change Arms from Left to Right Shoulder

0377. *The squad must now be taught how to Change Arms from the left shoulder to the right. This is done by demonstration and explanation.*

Conclusion

0378. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of striking, seizing and gripping the rifle.
 - (2) Calling out the time.
 - (3) A look forward to the Present Arms from the Shoulder to be taught in the next lesson.

0379. – 0389. *Reserved.*



Squad One



Squad Two

Fig 3-4. Change Arms



Squad Three



Squad Four

Fig 3-5. Change Arms

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 3. THE PRESENT ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0390. **Aim.** *To teach the Present Arms from the Shoulder.*
0391. **Timings.** *One 30 minute period.*
0392. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0393. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
0394. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0395. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
0396. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*
0397. **Revision.** *Revise the Change Arms from the shoulder.*

Introduction

0398. **Explain:** *The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Present Arms from the Shoulder. This movement is taught to enable an individual or a body of Riflemen to pay the highest compliment with a rifle in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Present Arms

0399. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Present Arms using the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, CALLING OUT THE TIME, PRESENT — ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.*

Present Arms — Squad One

03100. *The instructor is to brief that the position of Attention. Should be carried out as previously taught points to note are:*

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced, the right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the thumb curled around the front. The right arm is fully extended with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Common faults are the rifle not forced back into the shoulder and the bar- rel tipping forward.
- e. Call out "ONE STOP".

Present Arms — Squad Two

03101. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, PRESENT ARMS BY NUMBERS — SQUAD TWO!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain:* On the command force the left hand across the body by the shortest route to strike and grip the rifle in a full grip, on the area of the stock above the trigger guard, then freeze in this position.

03102. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- b. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, with the fingers closed and flush against the trigger guard with your arm parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "LEFT".

03103. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the shoulder and practice.*

Present Arms — Squad Three

03104. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, PRESENT ARMS BY NUMBERS — SQUAD THREE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain:* On the command release the right hand across the body by the shortest route to strike and grip the cheek piece of the rifle in a full vice like grip, then freeze in this position.

03105. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.

- b. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, with the fingers closed and flush against the trigger guard with your arm parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "LEFT".

03106. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the shoulder and practice.*

Present Arms — Squad Four

03107. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, force the rifle across and up to the front centre of the body with the right hand, at the same time releasing the grip with the left hand and forcing the left arm approximately 150 mm (six inches) from the rifle, extending the fingers and thumb. Then restrike the rifle with the left fingers, palm, wrist, forearm and elbow and freeze in this position.*

03108. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front and approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the front centre of the body.
- b. The right hand has a vice like grip on the small of the butt, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow well forced in.
- c. The left fingers are together and running vertically up the side of the rifle, with the thumb in line with the mouth.
- d. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well into the rifle, with the elbow touching the fingers of the right hand.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "LEFT".

03109. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Present Arms — Squad Five

03110. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FIVE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, force the rifle down the front centre of the body by fully extending the right arm. At the same time, change the grip with the right hand to a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt. At the same time, force the left hand approximately 150 mm (six inches) from the rifle to strike and seize the stock with a full grip. The exception is the thumb which is vertical to the rifle. At the same time also, bend the right knee in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground and the foot is hanging naturally below it, then force the right foot down just behind the left and freeze in this position.*

03111. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical, approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, except for the thumb, which is vertical to the rifle.
- d. The left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- e. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees, with the instep of the right boot touching the heel of the left. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "LEFT".

03112. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03113. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, calling out ONE STOP — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT, etc., moving only on the "LEFTS AND STAYING STILL IN THE RIGHTS" and to practice the squad, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03114. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing.
 - (2) The need to strike, seize and grip the rifle.
 - (3) A look forward to the Shoulder Arms from the Present to be taught in the next lesson.

03115. – 03119. *Reserved.*



Squad One



Squad Two

Fig 3-6. Present Arms



Squad Three - Front View



Squad Four - Side View

Fig 3-7. Present Arms — Squad Three



Fig 3-8. Present Arms - Final Position

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 4. THE SHOULDER ARMS FROM THE PRESENT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03120. **Aim.** *To teach the Shoulder Arms from the Present.*
03121. **Timings.** *One 30 minute period.*
03122. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
03123. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
03124. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03125. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
03126. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*
03127. **Revision.** *Revise the Present Arms from the Slope.*

Introduction

03128. **Explain:** *The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the Slope Arms from the Present, to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to return to the Slope having paid the highest compliment with the rifle in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Shoulder Arms

03129. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Shoulder Arms from the Present position, using the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, CALLING OUT THE TIME — SHOULDER — ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.*

Shoulder Arms — Squad One

03130. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SHOULDER ARMS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, force the rifle across the body on to the right shoulder under control of the left hand. At the same time, change the grip of*

the left hand to a full grip. The right hand releases the vice like grip and restrikes and grasps the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip along the side of the weapon, then freeze in this position.

03131. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate, with the wrist and forearm flush to the rifle and elbow forced well in.
- c. The right hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle, with the wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "LEFT".

03132. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Slope Arms and Present Arms then practice.*

Slope Arms — Squad Two

03133. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, force the left hand across the body by the shortest route to resume the position of Attention. At the same time, step forward and bend the right knee in front of the body so that the foot is hanging naturally below the knee, then force the right foot down beside the left and freeze in this position.*

03134. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of Shoulder Arms has now been resumed.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out "LEFT".

03135. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Shoulder Arms — Squad Three

03136. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, you are to stand at ease with the rifles as previously taught and freeze in this position.*

03137. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of stood at ease has now been resumed.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out "LEFT".

03138. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03139. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, calling out LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT, moving only on the "LEFTS AND STAYING PERFECTLY STILL ON THE RIGHTS" and to practice the squad, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03140. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing.
 - (2) The need to strike, seize and grip the rifle.
 - (3) A look forward to the ground arms at the halt to be taught in the next lesson.

03141. – 03149. *Reserved.*



Squad One



Squad Two

Fig 3-9. Shoulder Arms from the Present

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 5. THE GROUND ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03150. **Aim.** *To teach the Ground Arms from the Shoulder.*
03151. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*
03152. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
03153. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
03154. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03155. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
03156. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*
03157. **Revision.** *Revise rifle exercises taught earlier.*

Introduction

03158. **Explain:** *The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Ground Arms from the Shoulder in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Ground Arms

03159. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Ground Arms, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, GROUND — ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.*

Ground Arms — Squad Two

03160. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, GROUND ARMS — SQUAD TWO!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, force the rifle forward to the vertical position under control of the right hand. At the same time, force the left hand across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the stock of the rifle, then freeze in this position.*

03161. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand retains its 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The left forearm is parallel to the ground.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "LEFT".

03162. *Order the squad to Shoulder Arms then confirm by questions and practice.*

Ground Arms — Squad Three

03163. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD THREE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the right hand, force the hand approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) away from the rifle bending the elbow, to strike and grasp the rifle between the magazine housing and the pistol grip, then freeze in this position.*

03164. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of the movement.
- b. The right hand has a 'cup' like grip, with the exception of the thumb, between the magazine housing and the pistol grip, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "LEFT".

03165. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Ground Arms — Squad Four

03166. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the left hand and force it across the body by the shortest route to the correct position of Attention. At the same time, force the rifle down to the right side of the body, under control of the right hand, then freeze in this position.*

03167. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right arm is at its fullest extent with the rifle barrel square to the front and parallel to the ground.
- b. The left arm is in the correct position of Attention.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "LEFT".

03168. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Ground Arms — Squad Five

03169. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — Five!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain:* On the command, take a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches) with the left foot, placing the flat of the foot on the ground. Then bend both knees and lower the rifle to the ground, twisting the wrist of the right hand, to force the magazine to the right, then freeze in this position.

03170. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is square to the front with the magazine pointing to the right.
- b. The heel of the butt plate is in line with the front edge of the right boot.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "LEFT".

03171. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Ground Arms — Squad Six

03172. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — SIX!", at the same time calling out "FIVE". Explain:* On the command, release the grip of the rifle with the right hand. Take a pace of 375 mm (15 inches) to the rear with the left foot. Straighten the body to resume the correct position of Attention, then freeze in this position.

03173. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is square to the front with the butt plate in line with the front edge of the right boot.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "LEFT".

03174. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Ground Arms — Squad Seven

03175. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — SEVEN at the same time calling out “LEFT”. Explain: On the command, you are to stand at ease with the rifles as previously taught and freeze in this position.*

03176. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of stood at ease has now been resumed.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out “LEFT”.

03177. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03178. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement and then to practice the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, ONE STOP — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT, etc., moving only on the “LEFTS AND STAYING STILL ON THE RIGHTS” and to practice the squad, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03179. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for good timing.
 - (2) The importance of ensuring that the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front, whilst both knees are bent.
 - (3) A look forward to the Take Up Arms to be taught in the next lesson.

03180. – 03189. *Reserved.*



Squad One



Squad Two

Fig 3-10. Ground Arms from the Shoulder



Squad Three



Squad Four

Fig 3-11. Ground Arms from the Shoulder



Fig 3-12. Ground Arms — Final Position

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 6. THE TAKE UP ARMS FROM THE GROUND ARMS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03190. **Aim.** *To teach the Take Up Arms from the Ground Arms position.*
03191. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*
03192. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
03193. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
03194. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03195. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
03196. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a hollow square.*
03197. **Revision.** *Revise the Ground Arms.*

Introduction

03198. **Explain:** *The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Take Up Arms from the ground in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Take Up Arms

03199. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, CALLING OUT THE TIME, TAKE UP — ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Take Up Arms — Squad One

03200. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, TAKE UP ARMS — SQUAD ONE!", at the same time calling out "DOWN". Explain:* On the command, take a short, 375 mm (15 inches) pace with the left foot, place the flat of the boot on the ground, then bend both knees and grasp the rifle with a 'cup' like grip with the right hand, between the magazine housing and the pistol grip. Then freeze in this position.

03201. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground; the toes of the right foot are on the ground with the heel raised.
- b. The rifle remains on the ground under control of the right hand.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "DOWN".

03202. *Order the squad to Ground Arms then confirm by questions and practice.*

Take Up Arms — Squad Two

03203. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain:* On the command, the body is raised by straightening the legs and returning the feet to the correct position of Attention. At the same time force the rifle to a vertical position on the right side of the body under control of the right hand. And force the left hand across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the stock of the rifle, then freeze in this position. The body is frozen in this position.

03204. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body and both knees are braced.
- b. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body, the right hand retains its 'cup' like grip on the rifle with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. The left forearm is parallel to the ground.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "LEFT".

03205. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Take Up Arms — Squad Four

03206. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the right hand and force the hand 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the rifle to re-strike and grasp the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip, then freeze in this position.

03207. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. The right arm is fully extended with a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FOUR".

03208. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Take Up Arms — Squad Five

03209. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FIVE!", at the same time calling out "FIVE". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the left hand and force it across the body by the shortest route to resume the correct position of Attention. At the same time, force the rifle back to the correct position of the Shoulder Arms and freeze in this position.*

03210. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of Shoulder Arms has now been resumed.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "LEFT".

03211. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Take Up Arms — Squad Six

03212. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — SIX at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: On the command, you are to stand at ease with the rifles as previously taught and freeze in this position.*

03213. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of stood at ease has now been resumed.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out "LEFT".

03214. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03215. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement and then to practice the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT, etc., moving only on the "LEFTS AND STAYING PERFECTLY STILL ON THE RIGHTS" and to practice the squad, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03216. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for a good grip and timing.
 - (2) The importance of ensuring that the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front, whilst both knees are bent.
 - (3) A look forward to Saluting at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.

03217. – 03229. *Reserved.*

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 7. SALUTING TO THE FRONT AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03230. **Aim.** *To teach the Salute to the Front at the Halt.*

03231. **Timings.** *One 10 minute period.*

03232. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03233. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*

03234. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03235. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

03236. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*

03237. **Revision.** *Revise the Taking Up of Arms if applicable.*

Introduction

03238. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Salute to the Front at the Halt in order that an individual or body of Riflemen can pay the correct compliment to an officer in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Salute to the Front

03239. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE FRONT — SALUTE!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Salute to the Front — Squad One

03240. *The instructor is to brief that the position of Attention should be carried out as previously taught. Points to note are:*

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced; the right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the thumb curled around the front. The right arm is fully extended with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Common faults are the rifle not forced back into the shoulder and the bar- tipping forward.
- e. Call out "ONE STOP".

03241. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Slope Arms and practice.*

Salute to the Front — Two

03242. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "UP TWO THREE DOWN STOP". Explain: On the command, force the Left hand across the body by the shortest route, at the same time extending the fingers fully across the stock of the rifles above the trigger guard. Hold the position of the salute then whip the arm away into the position of attention. Then freeze in this position.*

03243. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right arm and rifle do not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. The left arm is parallel to the ground across the body, with the fingers together and resting on the trigger guard.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "LEFT".

03244. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Halt — Squad Three (see Fig 3-14)

03245. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE at the same time calling out "OUT". Explain: On the command, you are to stand at ease with the rifles as previously taught and freeze in this position.*

03246. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of stood at ease has now been resumed.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out "OUT".

03247. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03248. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement and then to practice the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, "ONE STOP — UP TWO THREE — DOWN STOP — OUT", and to practice the squad, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03249. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to strike the butt firmly.
 - (2) A look forward to Saluting to a Flank at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.

03250. – 03259. *Reserved.*



Fig 3-13. Salute to the Right

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 8. MOVING TO THE TRAIL ON THE MARCH

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03260. **Aim.** *To teach the movement of the rifle from the shoulder to the trail on the march.*

03261. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

03262. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03263. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*

03264. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03265. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

03266. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a hallow square.*

03267. **Revision.** *Revise the Salute to the Front at the Halt.*

Introduction

03268. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how March with the weapon at the trail. The reason the movement is taught is to enable a formed body of Riflemen to move between location in the trail as per our regimental custom, in a smart, uniform and soldier like manner. So that the emphasis is placed on the actions to be carried out as the left heel strikes the ground. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Move to the Right – Quick March

03269. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command “**MOVE, TO YOUR RIGHT — QUICK MARCH!**” at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Moving to the Right/left at the Trail — Squad One

03270. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “MOVE TO THE RIGHT/LEFT AT THE TRAIL , BY NUMBERS — SQUAD ONE!”, at the same time calling out “ONE STOP”. The instructor is to brief that the position of Attention should be carried out as previously taught.*

03271. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced; the right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the thumb curled around the front. The right arm is fully extended with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Common faults are the rifle not forced back into the shoulder and the barrel tipping forward.
- e. Call out “ONE STOP”.

Moving to the Right/left at the Trail — Squad Two

03272. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO STOP” as the movement is executed. Explain: on the command, the head, shoulders, body and feet are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel and left toe.*

03273. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground with the right heel raised.
- b. The body weight is over the right foot with the knees braced. Both knees are braced; the right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the thumb curled around the front. The right arm is fully extended with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. Rifle not forced back into the shoulder and the barrel tipping forward.
- d. Call out “TWO STOP”.

Moving to the Right/left at the Trail — Squad Three

03274. Immediately on the command, the right knee is bent and forced in front of the body so that the foot is 6 – 8 inches from the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced to the ground to resume the correct position of Attention. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “THREE STOP”

- a. Common faults are the Rifle not forced back into the shoulder and the barrel tipping forward.
- b. Call out “THREE STOP”.

Moving to the Right/left at the Trail — Squad Four

03275. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “**MOVE TO THE RIGHT/LEFT AT THE TRAIL — SQUAD FOUR!**”, at the same time calling out “UP”. Explain:* On the command, take a full marching pace of 450 mm (30 inches) with the left foot. As the left heel strikes the ground force the left arm across the body by the shortest route and strike, seize and grasp the stock of the rifle. Then freeze in this position.

03276. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced.
- b. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, with the fingers closed and flush against the trigger guard with your arm parallel to the ground.
- c. Call out “UP”.

03277. *Order the squad to Shoulder Arms and confirm by questions and practice.*

Moving to the Trail — Squad Five

03278. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “**SQUAD — FOUR!**”, at the same time calling out “**BACK – CHECK**”. Explain:* On the command, release the right hand from the butt of the rifle and grip the body between the pistol grip and magazine housing, ensuring that the right elbow is forced rearwards.

03279. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left arm remains across the body and the rifle does not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. Call out “BACK”

03280. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Moving to the Trail — Squad Six

03281. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — SIX!”, at the same time calling out “DOWN ”. Explain:* On the command, force the rifle down into the horizontal position and fully extend the right arm, locking out the elbow. At the same time cut the left arm away to its attention position.

- a. The right arm must be locked out at the elbow upon the execution of this movement.
- b. The muzzle must remain parallel to the ground, with the thumb running along the ridge running above the safety catch
- c. Call out “DOWN”.

03282. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Moving to the Trail — Squad Seven

03283. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — SEVEN!”, at the same time calling out “SWING”. Explain:* On the command, force the left arm fully rewards, the weapon remains in the trail and you continue to march as previously taught.

- a. The right arm must be locked out at the elbow whilst pushing down on the thumb upon the execution of this movement.
- b. The muzzle must remain parallel to the ground, with the thumb running along the ridge above the trigger/ safety catch.
- c. Call out “SWING”.

03284. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

03285. Demonstration and Practice

03286. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement and then practice the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, ONE STOP — TWO STOP — THREE STOP — UP CHECK — BACK CHECK — DOWN CHECK — SWING, , Conducting drill movements only as the “LEFT HEEL STRIKES THE GROUND” and to practice the squad, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03287. *End of Lesson Drill.*

- a.** *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b.** *Safety precautions.*
- c.** *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) Stress the importance of the head and eyes forced square across the shoulder.
 - (2) Emphasize that the actions of the Salute are carried out as the left heel strikes the ground.
 - (3) A look forward to Saluting on the March with the Rifle to be taught in the next lesson.

03288. – 03299. *Reserved.*

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 9. HALTING FROM THE TRAIL ON THE MARCH

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03300. **Aim.** *To teach Halting on the March with the rifle at the trail.*
03301. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*
03302. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
03303. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
03304. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03305. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
03306. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in one single rank.*
03307. **Revision.** *Revise Saluting at the Halt.*

Introduction

03308. **Explain:** *The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to halt from the trail on the March, so that an individual or body of Riflemen in a smart, uniform manner. You are to ensure that you halt as previously taught, calling out Halt, Check, ONE – TWO STOP. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

The Halt

03309. **Explain:** *For instructional purposes the Halt movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Squad Halt — One

03310. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — ONE!”, at the same time calling out “HALT – CHECK – ONE – TWO STOP” as the movement is executed. Explain:** *Immediately on the command, the halt must be carried out as previously taught, with the rifle remaining down in the trail. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out “HALT – CHECK – ONE – TWO STOP”.*

03311. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The reminder of the body is at the position of attention
- b. The rifle remains down in the trail position.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front

03312. The squad is to remain to the position of Attention, the order “HALT” given and the movement practiced

Halt — Squad Two

03313. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT” as the movement is executed.*

Explain: Immediately on the command, force the left arm across the body by the shortest route and force the rifle up into the horizontal position strike, seize and grasp the stock of the rifle. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out “LEFT”.

03314. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, with the fingers closed and flush against the trigger guard with your arm parallel to the ground
- b. The rifles is horizontal with the right elbow forced rearwards.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

03315. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Halt — Squad Three

03316. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — FOUR!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT”. Explain:*

On the command, release the grip with the right hand and force the hand 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the rifle to re-strike and grasp the butt plate with a ‘cup’ like grip, then freeze in this position. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out “LEFT”.

03317. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. The right arm is fully extended with a ‘cup’ like grip on the butt plate.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

- d. Call out “LEFT”.

03318. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Halt — Squad Four

03319. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — FOUR!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT”. Explain: On the command, release the right hand from the butt of the rifle and grip the body between the pistol grip and magazine housing, ensuring that the right elbow is forced rearwards. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “LEFT”.

03320. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left arm remains across the body and the rifle does not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. Call out “LEFT”

03321. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Halt — Squad Five

03322. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — FIVE!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT”. Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the left hand and force it across the body by the shortest route to resume the correct position of Attention. At the same time, force the rifle back to the correct position of the Shoulder Arms and freeze in this position.

03323. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of Shoulder Arms has now been resumed.

Halt — Squad Six

03324. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — SIX at the same time calling out “LEFT”. Explain:* On the command, you are to stand at ease with the rifles as previously taught and freeze in this position.

03325. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of stood at ease has now been resumed.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out “LEFT”.

03326. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Demonstration and Practice

03327. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement and then practice the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, CHECK - ONE — TWO STOP — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT RIGHT — LEFT , Conducting drill movements only when calling out the "LEFTS" and to practice the squad, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03328. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) *Stress the importance of conducting drill movements only on the rights.*



Fig 3-14. Marching and Halting from the Trail

CHAPTER 4

RIFLES SWORD DRILL

INTRODUCTION

0401. **General.** The sword is a traditional badge of rank and honour. In the Army, with the exception of the Mounted Squadron of the Household Cavalry, The King's Troop Royal Horse Artillery and certain soldiers in specified appointments, the sword indicates a holder of Her Majesty's Commission or Warrant. The two main qualities that should be pursued in sword drill are:

- a. Accuracy.
- b. Graceful Movement.

0402. When drawn, the sword is always held at the 'Carry'.

0403. When officers are ordered to fall in, they will come to Attention and draw their swords before stepping off. When ordered to fall out, they will salute the senior officer, return their swords and fall in behind him.

0404. **Method of Wearing Swords.** The method of wearing swords varies with the equipment worn by mounted and dismounted officers and soldiers, and in consequence the drawing and returning of swords will have slight variations but once the sword is drawn, sword exercises are the same for all. Swords are worn as follows:

- a. **Sam Browne Belt.** The sword hangs vertically with the hilt facing to the front and the pommel in line with the top of the Sam Browne Belt. As the sword hilt is already facing the front, no assistance is required by the left hand to turn the sword to the front.
- b. **Slung Sword.** The sword is hung on the belt hook, hilt to the rear behind the left elbow, shoe of the scabbard to the front.
- c. **Trailed Sword.** The sword is worn attached to the sword belt but is carried the left hand slightly forward of the left thigh.

0405. **Position of Attention.** For the various methods of wearing swords the position of Attention will be:

- a. **Sam Browne Belt.** The position of Attention, except that the scabbard is held with the left hand, the left arm straight, thumb curled around the front, back of the hand to the left, forefinger running down the left side, remaining fingers curled around the back. (In some Corps and Regiments the left arm is bent outside the hilt.)

b. *Slung Sword.* The position of Attention with the hilt of the sword behind the left elbow.

c. *Trailed Sword.* The position of Attention except that the left hand holding the sword in its scabbard is slightly forward of the left thigh.

0406. ***Trailed Sword.*** The sword is worn in this position by RIFLES officers and soldiers, when the sword is not drawn it rests on the ground in front of the left foot; the left hand holds the handle of the sword, back of the hand to the left, fingers curled around the handle, thumb around the right side. The sword handle is forward of the body. The drill for drawing and returning a trailed sword is as follows:

a. *To Draw Swords.* Grasp the top of the scabbard with the left hand and raise the sword to the line of the waist belt; the drill laid down in Lesson 1 is carried out and on the third movement the scabbard is lowered to about 50 mm (2 inches) from the ground retaining the grip with the left hand, arm close to the side.

b. *To Return Swords.* Raise the scabbard to receive the point of the sword and carry out the drill as laid down in Lesson 1. On the third movement, place the shoe of the scabbard on the ground and return the left hand to grasp the handle.

0407. ***Patrolling.*** When patrolling, the sword is held in the second position of the salute to the front (at the halt). Both arms are swung, ensuring that the sword is kept close to the body and the edge of the sword and the basket facing left, the point 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground.

0408. RIFLES Regimental traditions and customs may dictate the carriage of the sword. However, when parades involving different units occur, officers should liaise with the officer commanding the parade with regard to the method of carriage of swords.

0409. - 0419. *Reserved.*



Fig 4-1. Position of Attention — Slung Sword

SWORD DRILL LESSON 1. DRAW SWORDS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0420. **Aim.** To teach Draw Swords.

0421. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

0422. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

0423. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.

0424. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0425. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.

0426. **Revision.** Nil.

Introduction

0427. **Explain:** The first stage in sword drill is to learn the Draw Swords. The movement is taught to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to draw swords in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Carriage

0428. **Explain:** RIFLES Officers carry the sword scabbard in the left hand with the cage of the sword upper most, the left index finger should run down the length of the scabbard and remain in this position throughout. The scabbard is carried so that the foot of the scabbard is forward of the left foot.

Draw Swords

0429. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD WILL DRAW SWORD, DRAW — SWORDS!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Draw Swords — One

0430. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, DRAW SWORDS — ONE!”*, *Explain:* On the command, the top of the scabbard is grasped by the left hand, at the same time turning it so that the hilt of the sword is pointing to the front. At the same time, the right hand is taken across the body to grasp the handle of the sword, the back of the hand to the rear. The sword is then drawn with the right hand until the forearm is horizontal and as close to the body as possible with the pommel in line with the shoulder. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0431. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The fingers of the left hand are curled round the scabbard thumb on the right side, the left elbow to the rear.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0432. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Draw Swords — Two

0433. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”*. *Explain:* On the command, the sword is drawn sharply upwards and forwards to assume the position of the ‘Recover’. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0434. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The tip of the sword is uppermost, edge to the left, hilt in line with the mouth.
- b. Fingers are curled around the handle, the thumb pointing upwards, the back of the hand to the front.
- c. The forearm and elbow are close to the chest.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0435. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Draw Swords — Three

0436. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”*. *Explain:* On the command, the sword is brought to the right side to adopt the position of the ‘Carry’. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0437. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The blade is vertical, the edge to the front.
- b. The grip is changed during the movement, curling the fingers lightly round the handle and extending them so that the hilt rests lightly on the forefinger and thumb.
- c. The forearm is horizontal, the elbow close to the side.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0438. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0439. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, emphasizing that:*

- a. The squad do not call out.
- b. Accuracy and graceful movement are essential.

0440. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

0441. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The necessity for graceful movement.
 - (2) A look forward to the Return Swords, to be taught in the next lesson.

0442. - 0449. *Reserved.*



One



Two (The Recover)

Fig 4-2. Draw Swords



The Carry

Fig 4-3. Draw Swords — Three

SWORD DRILL LESSON 2. RETURN SWORDS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0450. **Aim.** *To teach Return Swords.*
0451. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*
0452. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0453. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*
0454. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0455. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*
0456. **Revision.** *Revise the Draw Swords, then return them to their scabbards.*

Introduction

0457. **Explain:** *The next lesson in Sword Drill is to learn how to Return Swords. The movement is taught to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to Return Swords in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" (swords still in scabbards) and watch your demonstration.*

Return Swords

0458. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD WILL RETURN SWORDS, RETURN — SWORDS!". Explain: For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.*

Return Swords — One

0459. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, RETURN SWORDS — ONE.*
0460. **Explain:** *On the command, the sword is brought across the body, the right hand keeping it vertical, until the hilt is to the left of and in line with the left shoulder. At the same time, seize the scabbard with the left hand turning it clockwise through 180 degrees. Allow the point of the sword to drop to the rear until it is parallel to the left*

side of the body. Allow the handle to rotate through the fingers so that the hilt is facing the front. When the sword point touches the scabbard raise the sword and guide it into the mouth of the scabbard by using the fingers of the left hand. Force the sword into the scabbard to the position of 'Draw Swords — One'. The body is then frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0461. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The edge of the sword is to the front.
- b. The right elbow is raised and the fingers of the left hand are curled round the top of the scabbard, the thumb on the inside.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0462. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention, draw swords to the Carry and practice.*

Return Swords — Two

0463. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SQUAD — TWO!**". *Explain:* On the command, the right hand is placed palm downwards on top of the pommel and with the left hand still holding the scabbard the sword is forced into the scabbard with the right forearm horizontal. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0464. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The fingers of the right hand are curled.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0465. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Return Swords — Three

0466. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SQUAD — THREE!**". Explain:* Both hands are returned to the side to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0467. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. As the left hand is returned to the side, the scabbard is given a flick to ensure that the sword returns to the correct position of Attention.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0468. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0469. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement.*

0470. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

0471. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*

b. *Summary. To include the following:*

(1) The need to feel positively for the scabbard entrance and the placing of the sword tip just into it.

(2) A look forward to the Shoulder, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy with the sword and Saluting at the Halt, to be taught in the next lesson.

0472. - 0479. *Reserved.*



One



Two

Fig 4-4. Return Swords

SWORD DRILL LESSON 3. SHOULDER SWORDS, STAND AT EASE AND STAND EASY AND THE SALUTE AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0480. **Aim.** *To teach Slope Swords, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy and Saluting at the Halt.*

0481. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

0482. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

0483. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

0484. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0485. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

0486. **Revision.** *Revise the Draw and Return Swords.*

Introduction

0487. **Explain:** The next stage in sword drill is to learn how to Slope Swords, to Stand at Ease and Easy with the sword drawn and how to Salute at the Halt. The movements are taught so that RIFLES officers on parade can follow their Riflemen' movements, and return a salute with the sword in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" (swords still in scabbards) and watch your demonstration of the Slope and Stand at Easy and Easy.*

Slope Swords, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy (with Swords Drawn)

0488. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movements, giving the words of command as follows:*

- a. **"SLOPE — SWORDS!"** *Explain:* The movement is done only from the Carry. Allow the sword to drop back on to the right shoulder. The forearm remains horizontal, the fingers rest on the handle and the little finger goes behind the handle.

b. **“STAND AT — EASE!”**. *Explain:* Bend the left knee and slope the sword. The left hand remains holding the scabbards as taught.

c. **“STAND — EASY!”**. *Explain:* Allow the point of the sword to fall forward and to the left so that it is placed to the ground between the feet in line with the tips of the toes. The basket is forward and the hand is cupped on top of the pommel. Releasing the scabbard place the left hand on top of the right hand and relax the body.

0489. **Points to Note.** These are:

a. The movements are carried out gracefully especially the Stand Easy, where it is necessary to feel carefully for the right position for the sword tip.

b. Timings are not to be called out.

0490. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention, draw swords and practice.*

The Salute to the Front

0491. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE FRONT — SALUTE!”, at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* The whole movement must be accurate and graceful, and the sword must not move unnecessarily. For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Salute to the Front — One

0492. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE FRONT — ONE!”, at the same time calling out “ONE”. Explain:* On the command, the sword is brought from the position of the Carry to the position of the Recover. The body is frozen in this position.

0493. **Points to Note.** These are:

a. The sword is now at the correct position of the Recover, the tip of the sword uppermost, edge to the left and the hilt in line with the mouth.

b. The fingers are curled around the handle — thumb pointing upwards, back of the hand to the front.

c. The forearm and elbow close to the chest.

d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

e. Call out “ONE”.

0494. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Carry and practice.*

Salute to the Front — Two

0495. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain: On the command, the sword is lowered to the right side of the body, so that the right arm is straight. The point of the sword is approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground and in front of the right shoulder, then freeze in this position.*

0496. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The edge of the sword is to the left, the thumb is flat on the side of the handle and the fingers grip the handle.
- b. The hilt is just behind the right thigh.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “TWO”.

0497. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Salute to the Front — Three

0498. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE”. Explain: On the command, the sword is brought back to the position of the Recover, i.e., The Salute to the Front — One. Observe the regulation pause and return the sword to the position of the Carry, then freeze in this position.*

0499. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword, when adopting the position of the Recover and the Carry, is moved with accuracy and graceful movement.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out “THREE”.

04100. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

04101. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, calling out the time and the squad is to practice, working on the “Numbers” and standing still on the “STOPS”.*

Conclusion

04102. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to keep the arm straight when required, and the sword tip no more than 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground, on the Salute.
 - (2) A look forward to Saluting on the March in Quick Time, to be taught in the next lesson.

04103. - 04109. *Reserved.*



Fig 4-5. Slope Swords



Fig 4-6. Stand Easy — Slung Sword



**Fig 4-7. Salute to the Front —
Second Movement**

SWORD DRILL LESSON 4. SALUTING ON THE MARCH IN SLOW AND QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

04110. **Aim.** *To teach Saluting on the March in Slow and Quick Time.*

04111. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

04112. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

04113. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

04114. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

04115. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

04116. **Revision.** *Revise Saluting at the Halt then return swords to their scabbards.*

Introduction

04117. **Explain:** The next stage in sword exercises in to learn how to Salute to a Flank whilst on the March in Slow and Quick Time. The movements are taught to enable a compliment to be paid during a ceremonial parade. The Salute in Slow Time will be taught first. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Salute on the March in Slow Time

04118. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "EYES — RIGHT!" or "EYES — LEFT!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Salute to the Right — One

04119. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, which is given as the right foot strikes the ground, take a further full marching pace with the left foot. As the left boot strikes the ground the right arm is forced out to the right at its fullest extent, at the same time the head and eyes are turned to the right, then freeze in this position.

04120. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The pommel of the sword is in line with the top of the right shoulder.
- b. The sword blade is square off to the right, the blade being vertical and the edge to the right.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

04121. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention and draw swords. Order the squad to Slow March and practice, calling out the time.*

Salute to the Right — Two

04122. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the right foot and during this pace bring the sword round in a circular sweep across the body, so that the pommel of the sword comes to the point of the left shoulder, then freeze in this position.*

04123. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The blade is kept vertical, the hand and elbow are kept the same height as in 'Salute to the Right — One'.
- b. The elbow is kept level with the shoulder whilst the thumb remains round the handle, the head and eyes remain looking square over the right shoulder.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

04124. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice, calling out the time.*

Salute to the Right — Three

04125. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, take a further full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the left foot and during this pace continue the sweeping motion of the right hand with the sword, passing through the position of the Recover until the pommel is in front of the point of the right shoulder, then freeze in this position.*

04126. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The wrist remains shoulder high with the hand in line with the mouth.
- b. The head and eyes remain looking square over the right shoulder.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

04127. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice, calling out the time.*

Salute to the Right — Four

04128. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain:* On the command, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the right foot. During this pace lower the elbow to the side, at the same time changing the grip, so that the thumb points up the side of the handle to assume the correct position of the Salute, then freeze in this position.

04129. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right arm is straight, the edge of the sword is to the left, the point 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground in front of the right shoulder.
- b. The hilt is positioned just behind the right thigh and the head and eyes remain looking square over the right shoulder.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FOUR".

04130. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice, calling out the time.*

Eyes — Front

04131. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "EYES — FRONT!". Explain:* On the command, received as the right foot touches the ground and working on the next left foot, the head and eyes are returned to the front. At the same time, the sword is brought to the position of the Recover. On the next left foot the sword is brought to the position of the Carry as marching in Slow Time continues at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute. Do not call out the time.

04132. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The elbow is kept close to the side of the body when bringing the sword to the position of the Recover.
- b. The right forearm remains horizontal, elbow close to the side when in the position of the Carry.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

04133. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Slow March with the sword in the Salute position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

04134. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of both movements then practise the squad, getting them to call out the timing "ONE — TWO — THREE — FOUR" on the Salute.*

Saluting on the March in Quick Time

04135. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement. Explain:* The sword will be retained at the Carry. The head and eyes will be turned on the word of command given to the troops. If units through regimental custom salute with the sword in Quick Time, the salute is given working as each left foot strikes the ground as for the Slow March just taught.

04136. *Practice the squad.*

Conclusion

04137. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing in the salute, the position of the forearm and tip of the sword from the ground.
 - (2) The need to look the officer taking the salute in the eye.
 - (3) A look forward to the Reverse Swords from the Carry, to be taught in the next lesson.



Squad One



Squad Two

Fig 4-8. Salute to the Left or Right — The Flourish



Squad Three



Squad Four

Fig 4-9. Salute to the Left or Right

CHAPTER 5

RIFLES CANE DRILL

CANE DRILL LESSON 1. POSITION OF ATTENTION AND STAND AT EASE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0501. **Aim.** *To teach the position of Attention and Stand at Ease when carrying a cane.*
0502. **Timings.** *One 10 minute period.*
0503. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0504. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with cane or whip.*
0505. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any other suitable area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0506. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*
0507. **Revision.** *Nil.*

Introduction

0508. **Explain:** *All the movements taught are for use with The Rifles cane. The first lesson in cane drill is to learn the positions of Attention and the Stand at Ease so that when using the cane it can be carried in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Positions of Attention and Stand at Ease

0509. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movements, giving the correct words of command.** *Explain: The position of Attention will be taught first.*

The Position of Attention

0510. **The instructor is to adopt the position of Attention.**

0511. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane is held vertically in the right hand close to the body.
- b. The joint of the first forefinger of the left hand is positioned under the ball of the cane and pointing towards the thigh. The thumb is down and to the front — the remaining three fingers grasping the cane.
- c. The ferrule of the cane is in front of the left shoulder.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Do not call out the time.

0512. *Order the squad into the position of Attention and confirm by practice.*

The Stand at Ease

0513. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “STAND AT — EASE!”. Turn about to explain the position of the cane in this position. Explain: On the command, stand at ease as already taught and freeze in this position.*

0514. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The back of the left hand is in the palm of the right hand.
- b. The cane is held in the left hand as for the position of Attention, the cane itself being between the crook of the right arm and the body.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

0515. *Order the squad into the position of Attention and confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

0516. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of both movements then practise the squad, who do not call out the timing.*

Conclusion

0517. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include a look forward to Marching, to be taught in the next lesson.*

0518. - 0529. *Reserved.*



Fig 5-1. Position of Attention



Front View



Rear View

Fig 5-2. Stand at Ease

CANE DRILL LESSON 2. MARCHING AND DISMISSING

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0530. **Aim.** *To teach Marching and Dismissing when carrying a cane.*
0531. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*
0532. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0533. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with cane or whip.*
0534. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any other suitable area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0535. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*
0536. **Revision.** *Revise the Attention and Stand at Ease positions.*

Introduction

0537. *Explain:* The next stage in cane drill is to learn to March with the Cane and Dismiss so that an individual or body of Riflemen can march and dismiss together correctly in a smart, uniform manner. Marching will be taught first. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Marching with the Cane

0538. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement calling out the time for the first six paces. Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Quick March — One

0539. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARCHING, BY NUMBERS, QUICK MARCH — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, adopt the position of Attention, pause take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the left foot. At the same time, grasp the middle of the cane in the middle with the right hand and freeze in this position.

0540. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane remains vertical on the left side of the body, the right hand is gripping the cane in the middle.

- b. Fingers are closed and both hands form a fist.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

0541. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Quick March — Two

0542. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, take a further full pace with the right foot, and then one with the left. As the heel of the left foot strikes the ground, straighten the right arm so that the cane becomes horizontal on the right side of the body. At the same time, return the left arm to the left side of the body and freeze in this position.*

0543. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane is now in the position of the 'Trail' held horizontal and close to the right side of the body.
- b. The left arm resumes the correct position of Attention.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

0544. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Quick March — Three

0545. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out "SWING". Explain: On the command, take further full paces with the right and left feet. As the heel of the left foot strikes the ground, the left arm is swung fully to the rear and the right arm forward, then freeze in this position.*

0546. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane remains horizontal and is held between the thumb and the first two fingers of the right hand.
- b. The cane must remain straight and horizontal when swinging the arm front to rear and continuing to march at the regulation pace of 140 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

- d. Call out "SWING".

0547. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0548. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practice the squad, who do not now call out the timing. Explain:* Should the squad be dressed at less than an arm's interval and moved to a flank, the cane will be kept at the position of Attention and both arms will be swung. Practice the squad.

The Dismiss

0549. *The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the complete movement giving the order "DISMISS!". Explain:*

- a. When an officer is present, the squad will carry out the following movements, judging the pause between them: Turn to the right, with the cane vertical in the left hand, salute, hand away and march off bringing the cane to the Trail working from the first left foot.
- b. When no officer is present, the squad will turn to the right, judge the pause and march off, bringing the cane to the Trail.

0550. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

0551. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of good arm swinging.
 - (2) A look forward to Halting, to be taught in the next lesson.

0552. - 0559. *Reserved.*



First Position



Second Position

Fig 5-3. Quick March



Fig 5-4. Quick March — Third Position

CANE DRILL LESSON 3. HALTING

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0560. **Aim.** *To teach Halting when carrying a cane.*
0561. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*
0562. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0563. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with cane or whip.*
0564. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any other suitable area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0565. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*
0566. **Revision.** *Revise Marching with the Cane.*

Introduction

0567. **Explain:** The next stage in cane drill is to learn how to Halt with the cane so that an individual or body of Riflemen can halt correctly when carrying the cane, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Halting with the Cane

0568. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — HALT!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Squad Halt — One

0569. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "HALTING, BY NUMBERS, SQUAD HALT — ONE!". Explain:* On the command, as the left heel strikes the ground, halt as previously taught, the cane being kept at the position of the Trail. Then bend the right arm, keeping the elbow to the side, so that the cane is vertical in front of the left shoulder. At the same time, the left hand grasp the cane and the right hand is then forced down to the position of Attention, pause then stand At Ease. Then freeze in this position.

0570. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left forearm is horizontal, the left hand having a full grip of the centre of the cane, the back of the hand to the front.
- b. The cane is forced back into the left shoulder by the right hand.
- c. The left hand grasps the cane as for the position of Attention.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out the timing — “ONE STOP — TWO STOP — OUT”.

0571. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Quick march and practice the squad.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0572. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practice the squad, who should continue to call out the timing “ONE STOP — TWO STOP — OUT”.*

Conclusion

0573. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing.
 - (2) A look forward to Saluting, to be taught in the next lesson.

0574. - 0579. *Reserved.*



First Position



Final Position

Fig 5-5. The Halt



Fig 5-6. Salute at the Halt

CHAPTER 6

FUNERAL PLANNING AND PROCEDURES, RIFLE EXERCISES AND SWORD DRILLS

PART 1. PLANNING AND PROCEDURES

Introduction

0601. The Military Funeral is an integral part of service life, as it has always been, and today it can attract special media attention, especially if it is the result of an operational death. Therefore, it is important, not only for the bereaved families, but also for the Regiment, that it is carried out correctly and with the dignity that such a solemn occasion requires. The aim of this Chapter is to lay down the procedures to be carried out and the drills to be taught and rehearsed, as required in the references below.

Planning and Liaison

0602. **General.** Usually the time between notification and interment is only a few days, so rapid and thorough planning is essential if the ceremony is to be performed with precision.

- a. *Timings.* The following timings must be confirmed:
 - (1) The time the remains are to leave the Chapel of Rest or residence of the deceased.
 - (2) The time of the church service.
 - (3) The time of interment or cremation.
- b. *Locations.* The following locations must be clearly known:
 - (1) The Chapel of Rest.
 - (2) The home of the deceased.
 - (3) The church.
 - (4) The cemetery or crematorium.
 - (5) The route and approximate travel times between the locations.
- c. *Persons to Contact.* The following persons should be contacted:
 - (1) The funeral director.

- (2) The padre.
- (3) The head of family.

d. *Detailed Points to Check.* It is essential to carry out a preliminary visit. In order to plan effectively, the following need to be seen in detail:

- (1) *The Chapel of Rest.* Check for:
 - (a) The position of the coffin.
 - (b) The space in which to turn.
 - (c) The route out, i.e., height and width of doors, corners and steps.
 - (d) The position for the hearse and Firing Party.
- (2) *Home.* In addition to the above (less the Firing Party) and because most house doors are very narrow, the Bearer Party may have to form up outside, close to the door and receive the coffin from a party within. After placing in the hearse the Bearer Party may travel either with, separate or in advance of the hearse, to the church.
- (3) *Church.* In addition to the above points, check the following:
 - (a) The position of the Bearer Party when the hearse arrives.
 - (b) That the aisle is wide enough for the Bearer Party.
 - (c) That there is enough room to turn in front of the altar.
 - (d) The seating for the Bearer Party.
 - (e) The position of the hearse when departing.
 - (f) The arrangements for the Bearer Party to leave before the cortege.
- (4) *Crematorium.* At the crematorium, check for:
 - (a) The position of the bearers when the hearse arrives.
 - (b) The widths and heights of the doors and aisles.
 - (c) The space for turning and placing of the coffin on the bier.
 - (d) The seating for the Bearer Party.

- (e) The position of a Bugler.
 - (f) The position of the Firing Party outside and signals for them to react.
 - (g) The undressing of the coffin (see paragraph 0907.i. below.).
- (5) *Cemetery.* At the cemetery, check:
- (a) *For the Bearer Party.*
 - i. The position and size of the grave. The grave must be large enough to receive the coffin.
 - ii. Where to halt and position the hearse.
 - iii. The route to the grave.
 - iv. Whether the side of the grave is to be strengthened with boards and covered, i.e., with synthetic grass.
 - v. The position of a Bugler.
 - vi. Whether the coffin will have to be turned before being laid over the grave.
 - vii. The position of the Bearer Party after they have lowered the coffin.
 - (b) *For the Firing Party.*
 - i. Transport to take them to the cemetery, so that they arrive before the cortege.
 - ii. Where the Firing Party is to line the route.
 - iii. Where the Firing Party is to move to and fire volleys with blank cartridges, after the coffin and mourners have passed through.

0603. **Contact with Leading Personalities.** The following persons must be visited by the officer in charge of the military group and detailed arrangements discussed:

- a. *The Funeral Director.* The Funeral Director is the person who will be able to answer most of the questions, so it is important to establish a good relation- ship with him. He is an expert in his profession and the whole event will run smoothly with his cooperation. The points which have to be clarified are:

- (1) Who is going to dress the coffin and when. This will probably be the head of the military detachment.
- (2) Will trestles be provided at the chapel, home, church and crematorium.
- (3) Are support poles and straps available and can you use them for rehearsals.
- (4) Is the coffin to be undressed in the crematorium before the service or after and are these items to be collected from the crematorium authorities later.
- (5) Confirm the locations of the hearse stop and start points, including the opening and closing of hearse doors.
- (6) Suggest that the hat orderlies or other military personnel remove the trestles and support poles as and when required.

b. *Padre.* It may be necessary to explain the procedure to the padre in case he is unfamiliar with a military funeral. He in turn will have to explain the details of the service, so that when to remove the coffin to the hearse and the procedure at the graveside or in the crematorium is clear. He will make the decision when the coffin is lowered and should say where he would like the Bearer Party to sit during the service.

c. *The Head of Family.* It will be helpful to have the padre present when the family is visited. Ask for their floral tribute with which to dress the coffin. Also explain the procedure that will take place throughout the funeral. Most families will deem it an honour if the Bearer Party attends a gathering afterwards, so remember that a refusal often offends.

d. *The Regimental Representative.* If unable to carry out a preliminary visit these representatives may be used and should be fully aware of all these points. Other needs they can arrange are:

- (1) Transport, accommodation, feeding, security of arms and ammunition, including the supply, storage and disposal of empty and unfired cartridges.
- (2) Meetings with the padre, family, funeral director and others.
- (3) Permission for use of locations for rehearsal.
- (4) The supply of a practice coffin, trestles, poles and straps if needed.
- (5) Responsibility for supplying the Union Flag and the deceased's headdress, decorations, belt and sidearms.

- (6) Liaison with the local police over traffic control and security.

0604. **Reconnaissance and Rehearsal.** The officer in charge of the military group must carry out a ground visit himself. Rehearsals should, where possible, be held at the exact location, at least the day before the funeral, or in the morning for an afternoon committal.

Detailed Procedures and Drills at a Funeral

0605. **Planning and Preparation.** The provisions of a Military Funeral with Military Honours is subject to the conditions laid down in Queen's Regulations 1975, Chapter 7, Part 6, which should be read in conjunction with any local Standing Orders. This Chapter deals mainly with funerals for all ranks below Major General and are able to be modified, perhaps extensively, to suit the circumstances at the time.

a. Troops Taking Part.

- (1) *The Bearer Party.* This will normally consist of:

- (a) An Officer, Warrant Officer or Senior Non Commissioned Officer in charge.
- (b) Six to eight bearers, depending on the size of the coffin.
- (c) Two reserve bearers.
- (d) Two hat orderlies.

- (2) *Ranks of the Bearers.* These will depend on the rank of the deceased as laid down in Queen's Regulations, Chapter 7, Part 6.

- (3) *The Firing Party.* This will consist of:

- (a) One Senior Non Commissioned Officer.
- (b) One Corporal.
- (c) Twelve Junior Ranks.
- (d) One Bugler.

b. Detailed Preparation — The Bearer Party.

- (1) *Sizing and Numbering.* Sizing is to be done, taking into account the height of the shoulder as well as the head. The Party is to be numbered so that the odd numbers are on the left when in the Carry position, the highest numbers at the head of the coffin.

(2) *Words of Command.* These will be given in a quiet tone, audible only to the Bearer Party. The movements cannot be controlled by signal and must always be ordered by word of command. The introductory word of command is always “BEARER PARTY”.

(3) *Dressing the Coffin.* The coffin should be dressed by the Bearer Party commander as follows:

- (a) The Union Flag placed over the coffin as though the pike were at the head end.
- (b) The headdress in the centre, at the head end.
- (c) The decorations in the centre, half way to the middle.
- (d) The belt and sword or sidearms in the middle.
- (e) The family wreath at the foot end.

Note. The commander must ensure that these items are properly secured. The coffin will be located in the Chapel of Rest or church with the foot end closest to the altar.

0606. *The Detailed Drill for the Bearer Party from the Church or Chapel.* When ordered the Bearer Party, without headdress, are to step off and halt, without ceremony, alongside the coffin and then turn inwards. The commander is to be two paces to the rear. Then:

a. *Lifting and Moving the Coffin.*

(1) On the command “**PREPARE TO LIFT**”. The bearers are to place both hands, fingers together, under the coffin, with the thumbs running vertically up the side, shoulder width apart, ensuring that the Union Flag is between the hands and the coffin.

(2) On the command “**LIFT!**”. The Bearer Party are to take the weight by straightening the back, keeping their arms at their fullest extent and allowing the coffin to clear the trestles. The hat orderlies or others then remove the trestles.

(3) On the command “**PREPARE TO RAISE — RAISE!**”. The bearers are to lift the coffin slowly, ensuring that it remains level, until the hands come into line with the shoulders.

(4) On the command “**OUTWARDS**”. The hand nearest the foot end is to be rotated outwards, so that the thumb is underneath and the fingers together running vertically up the side.

(5) On the command “**TURN!**”. The bearers are to turn and face the foot end, at the same time placing the coffin well onto the shoulders, the inside arm passing beneath the coffin so that the hand is able to rest firmly on the outside shoulder of the bearer’s opposite number. The outside arm is to be bent at the elbow, the hand being positioned as close to the face as possible.

(6) On the command “**TURNING, SLOW — MARCH!**”. The Bearer Party are to execute a turn of 180 degrees to the right or far enough to face the required exit. In order not to disturb the coffin whilst turning, the foot end bearers are to step a side pace to the right then bring their feet together. The head end bearers are to step a side pace to the left then bring their feet together. The centre bearers are to small side-step on the spot to the left. All bearers are to side-step simultaneously until facing the required exit and on the command “**STAND STILL!**” they are to halt with their feet together. This is a very difficult movement and must be carried out very slowly.

(7) On the command “**SLOW — MARCH!**”. The Bearer Party step off with the inside foot leading. The commander may keep the step by saying very softly “**INSIDE**” “**OUTSIDE**”. The coffin is always to be carried foot end foremost.

(8) *Position of Commander.* Where possible the commander should remain two paces from the head end and follow the coffin.

(9) *Obstacles.* Whilst on the march, the Bearer Party may have to negotiate obstacles such as tight corners or steps. If so, they are to be halted and with dignity negotiate the obstacle. If negotiating steps or stairs the bearers at the lower end are to change the position of the hands so as to support the weight of the coffin.

b. *Halting and Lowering the Coffin.* The next stage will commence with:

(1) The command “**HALT!**”. This is given as the outside feet come to the ground. The bearers are to complete the pace with the next foot and then place the outside foot beside it.

(2) On the command “**INWARDS**”. The bearers are to rotate the outside hand, so that the fingers are extended beneath the coffin with the thumb running up the side, forward of the face.

(3) On the command “**TURN!**”. The bearers are to turn and face the coffin, the chest approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from it, taking the weight with the outside hand for a moment until they can withdraw the inside arm from beneath the coffin so as to be able to place the inside hand back underneath the coffin to adopt the Raise position.

(4) On the command **“PREPARE TO LOWER — LOWER!”**. The bearers are to lower the coffin gently, ensuring that it remains level, to arms length or to the required height for the trestles or to allow it to be fed into the hearse.

c. *The Feed into the Hearse.* The next stage will commence with:

(1) The command **“PREPARE TO FEED — FEED!”**. The bearers, moving inside hand to outside hand, feed the coffin into the hearse. The foot end bearers are to guide it into the correct position. As each pair ‘lose’ the coffin, on an **“UP!”** from one of them, they resume the position of Attention. The foot end bearers must ensure that the coffin is placed into the hearse and is secure before they act on the **“UP!”**.

(2) On the command **“OUTWARDS — TURN!”**. The Bearer Party turn to face the hearse without bending the knee.

d. *Replacing Headdress.* This next stage will commence with:

(1) The command **“PREPARE TO RECEIVE HEADDRESS — RECEIVE!”**. The Bearer Party will bend both elbows, at the same time extending the fingers vertically and together to a position, with the palms approximately 225 mm (9 inches) apart, in front and to the right or left of the outside shoulder. The two hat orderlies who are two paces in rear of the commander are to act together and move along their respective files distributing the hats to each man on the Bearer Party, ensuring each man receives his own hat which must be clearly marked. Having given them, the orderlies return to their previous positions in rear of the commander, ensuring they cover off their respective files.

(2) On the command **“HEADDRESS!”**. The Bearer Party will replace headdress, using both hands to position the hat correctly and freeze in this position.

(3) On the command **“UP!”**. The Bearer Party will return both hands by the shortest possible route to the position of Attention. If the Party are travelling to the place of interment separately, they will be stepped off in Quick Time and Fall Out to the transport out of sight of the mourners. If the cortege is to proceed by procession to the place of interment, the next word of command is given by the Firing Party commander.

(4) On the Firing Party commander’s order **“SLOW — MARCH!”**. The Bearer Party step off and take up a position to cover off the front, centre, rear and two paces to the outside of the hearse. The Bearer Party commander will move two paces centre rear of the hearse with the hat orderlies two paces to his rear and covering off their respective files.

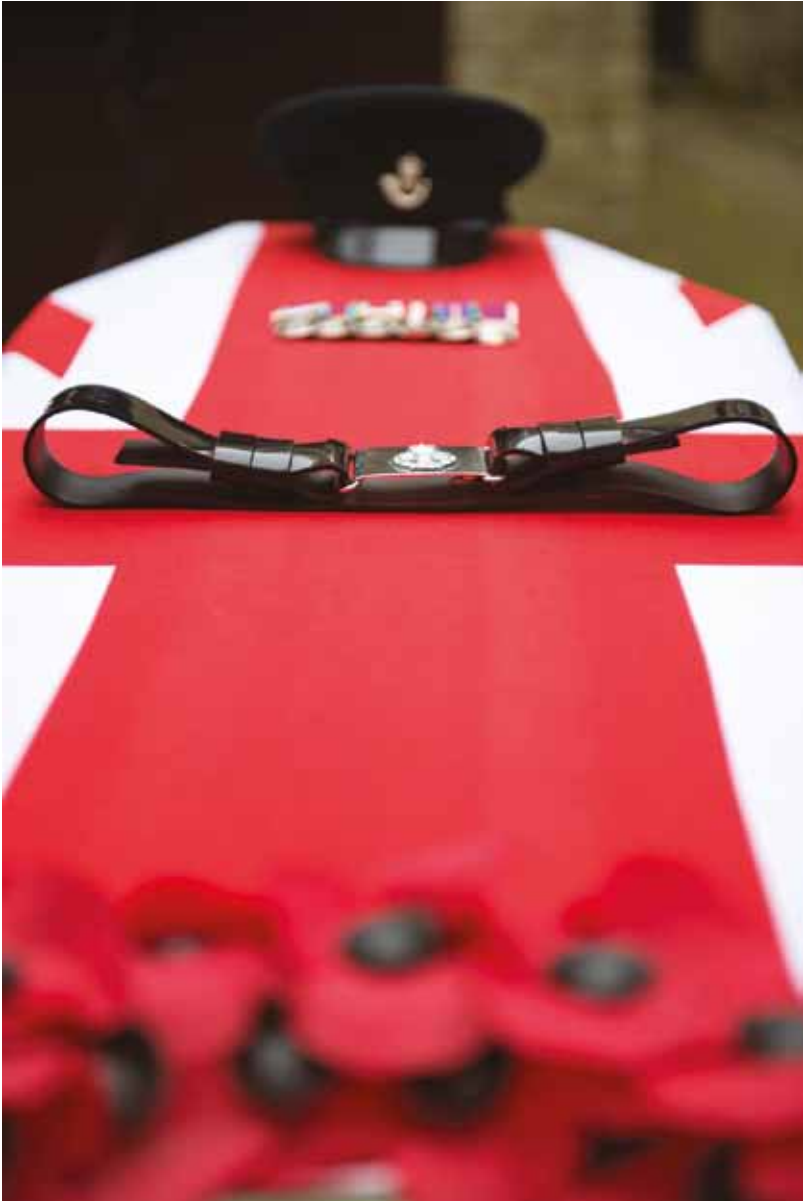


Fig 6-1. Dressing the Coffin



Fig 6-2. Prepare to Lift



Fig 6-3. Raise - Final Position



Fig 6-4. Outwards



Fig 6-5. Turn



Fig 6-6. Turn

e. *Procession Words of Command.* The Bearer Party will act on the words of command **“BREAK INTO QUICK OR SLOW TIME”** as given by the Firing Party commander.

f. *The Halt of the Hearse.* Before the hearse arrives at its halt point, the Bearer Party, on orders from the commander, will step short and regain its previous position in rear of the hearse. The next stage of the procedure then commences with:

(1) The command **“HALT!”**. On this command, the bearers and hearse should halt together.

(2) On the command **“PREPARE TO REMOVE HEADDRESS, REMOVE — HEADDRESS!”**, **“UP!”**. The Bearer Party will carry out the actions as described above, but in the reverse order. The hat orderlies return to their correct position.

(3) On the command **“INWARDS — TURN!”**. The Bearer Party will carry out the turn as described above. If necessary they can be given **“OUTWARDS — DRESS!”** ensuring the foot end bearers are as close to the hearse as is required. Note that before being ordered to **“INWARDS — TURN!”** the funeral director or one of his assistants should open the hearse door.

(4) On the command **“PREPARE TO FEED — FEED!”**. The foot end bearers will grasp hold of the coffin handles with their outside hands and the base with their inside hands. On an **“UP!”** from one of them they will withdraw the coffin to a point where they can adopt the Feed position as described above. On a second **“UP!”** they will feed the coffin from the hearse right hand to left. In pairs, the remaining bearers will take the weight also working on an **“UP!”** until the commander is satisfied that the weight is evenly distributed and the Bearer Party is in the correct position of the Lift as already described.

(5) On the command **“RAISE, OUTWARDS — TURN!”**, **“SLOW — MARCH!”**. The Bearer Party will carry out the actions as already described. The hearse will move off when the coffin has cleared its rear. Then with the padre leading, the Bearer Party will make its way to the grave side, manoeuvring carefully as necessary and be ordered to **“HALT!”** when the foot end bearers are one pace from, and in line with, the end-edge of the grave. The commander will then order **“INWARDS — TURN!”** and **“PREPARE TO LOWER — LOWER!”** as already described.

g. *Placing the Coffin over the Grave.* When the commander is satisfied that the Bearer Party are covering off the sides of the grave he will give the command **“SLOW — MARCH!”**. They will then step off, side pacing along the side of the grave, the foot end feet moving first, ensuring that they step over the sup- port poles and straps laid over the grave as shown in Fig 125, until the coffin is covered off over the grave. He will order **“STAND — STILL!”** and the Bearer Party will adopt the position of Attention.

h. *The Lower to the Supports.* As soon as possible after the **“STAND — STILL!”** the commander will give the command **“PREPARE TO LOWER — LOWER!”**. The Bearer Party will then take a pace to the rear with the right foot and then bend both knees until the right knee touches the ground, at the same time gently and evenly lowering the coffin until it comes into contact with the supports as illustrated in Fig 126. Note the cap bearers may accompany the Bearer Party. The commander then gives the order **“UP!”** and the bearers will force both arms to the position of Attention. The commander should follow the coffin to the edge of the grave and kneel with the bearer party.

i. *Undressing the Coffin.*

(1) ***The Accoutrements.*** On the command **“WREATH!”**, the right hand foot end bearer will lift up the wreath and place it to his left on the coffin. The bearer on his left will put the belt onto the wreath and place both items to his left. The bearer opposite will place the decorations on the wreath and place it to his right. The bearer to his right will put the cap on top and place all the accoutrements in front of the commander. He will remove them from the coffin and retain them in both hands. Bearers on completion of their task will resume the position of Attention. If the coffin has had to be turned for any reason the actions above are the same except starting with the headdress.

(2) ***Folding the Flag.*** To fold the flag the commander is to give the command **“PREPARE TO FOLD FLAG — FOLD!”**. On this the bearers will grasp the edges of the flag with both hands. Then:

(a) On the command **“FLAG!”**. The right side bearers will fold the flag so that the edge reaches the far side of the coffin. Then:

(b) On the command **“UP!”**. They will resume the position of Attention. Then:

(c) On the command **“LEFT SIDE — FOLD!”**. They will fold the flag until the edge is level with the far side. Then:

(d) On the command **“UP!”**. They will resume the position of Attention. Finally:



Fig 6-7. Support Poles and Straps over the Grave



Fig 6-8. Lower to the Supports

(e) On the command **“PREPARE TO FOLD FLAG — FOLD!”**. Starting with the right hand foot end bearer they will fold the flag into a triangle taking it in turns alternately right and left until the flag is neatly folded into a triangle in front of the commander. He will then place the accoutrements onto it and remove the flag from the coffin retaining all these items in both hands. Each bearer on completing their folds and having smoothed the flag flat will return their arms to the position of Attention.

j. *Feeding the Straps, Lifting, Lowering and Release Straps.*

(1) *Feeding the Straps.* The straps should be previously positioned so that at this time they are to the right of each bearer. On the command **“PREPARE TO FEED STRAPS — FEED!”** each bearer will grasp the end of his strap with the right hand. Then:

(a) On the command **“STRAPS!”**. Using both hands they will feed the straps from the bottom vertically up through the handles, ensuring that:

i. The centre of each strap ends up under the centre of the coffin base.

ii. That the excess is fed to their right rear. Both hands should end up in a full grip on the strap with the right hand above and just touching the left, with the thumbs uppermost. Then:

(b) On the command **“STAND — UP!”**. The Bearer Party bends both knees and resumes the position of Attention, at the same time allowing the straps to run through both hands until the arms are at their fullest extent in the front centre of the body, with the straps taut.

(2) *Lifting the Coffin.* On the command **“PREPARE TO LIFT — LIFT!”**. The bearers will take the weight on the straps and lift the coffin evenly just clear of the supports. At this point two persons who have been previously detailed will remove the supports.

(3) *Lowering the Coffin.* On the command **“PREPARE TO LOWER — LOWER!”**. The bearers will allow the straps to slide slowly through their hands, so that the coffin is lowered gently and evenly into the grave. During this movement, if the coffin becomes uneven the commander may order **“STOP!”**, **“LOWER ON THE LEFT/RIGHT/FEET/ HEAD”**, **“STOP!”**, **“PREPARE TO LOWER — LOWER!”** as necessary until the coffin has returned level and has completed its journey.

(4) *Release Straps.* On the command **“PREPARE TO RELEASE STRAPS — RELEASE!”**. The bearers will let the straps fall to their right rear and return both hands to the position of Attention.

k. *The March Off.* On the command **“OUTWARDS — TURN!”**. The bearers will turn to face the commander. Then:

(1) On the command **“QUICK — MARCH!”**. They will step off and march to their previously chosen position, the commander bringing up the rear. On the arrival at their correct position he will then:

(2) Order the Bearer Party to **“HALT!”** and **“REPLACE — HEAD-DRESS!”**. This time the commander will be the last to receive his head-dress so that one of the hat orderlies can take the flag and accoutrements from him before he receives his own hat. The commander will then order the Bearer Party to turn and face the grave.

(3) On the command **“PRESENT — ARMS!”** from the Firing Party commander, he will salute and complete the compliment when arms are Shouldered. If there is no Firing Party he will salute on the first note of Last Post and complete the compliment on the last note of Rouse.

(4) After the order **“DISMISS!”** he will retrieve the flag and accoutrements from the hat orderly and either himself or an officer hands them to the head of the family.

0607. ***Firing Party.*** The procedures to Rouse and Dismiss are as follows:

a. *Forming Up and Movement.* In the event of a procession, the Firing Party will be formed up in two ranks, at the Shoulder, one pace interval between files in front of the hearse facing the building in which the coffin is resting. The corporal will be on the left of the front rank. The sergeant will give all the words of command and be positioned in centre rear. When the coffin emerges from the building the Firing Party will Present Arms. After the coffin has been placed into the hearse and when the Bearer Party are replacing headdress, the Firing Party will Shoulder then Reverse Arms and then be ordered to turn and face the direction of march. On completion of the turn the regulation pause is observed and the sergeant and corporal step off together and fall in, the sergeant two paces in rear and midway between the ranks, and the corporal two paces in front of and midway between the ranks. On the sergeant's word of command, the parade steps off in Slow Time. Depending on the distance from stepping off to graveside, the parade may break into Quick Time and Change Arms as necessary ensuring that they break into Slow Time on approaching the cemetery.

b. *Procedure on Arrival at Place of Interment.* The Firing Party will take up a position so as to line the final part of the route inside the gates and will be ordered to **“LOWER ON YOUR ARMS — REVERSED!”**. Prior to the command **“HALT!”** the sergeant and corporal will regain the same positions they had before stepping off. After observing the regulation pause the Firing Party will turn inwards. Once the Bearer Party and mourners have passed through the Firing Party, the commander is to order them to **“PRESENT — ARMS!”**, **“SHOULDER — ARMS!”** and turn towards the direction of the grave. They are then to be stepped off and halted in the position where they are to fire the volleys, turn to face the grave and be ordered to **“LOWER ON YOUR ARMS — REVERSED!”**.

c. *Procedure for Firing Volleys.* After the service and on a signal from the commander, the sergeant is to give the following orders to fire the volleys:

“PARTY!” (To raise the heads of the Firing Party)

“PRESENT — ARMS!”

“SHOULDER — ARMS!”

“VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES — LOAD!”

“PRESENT!” “FIRE!” “RELOAD!”

“PRESENT!” “FIRE!” “RELOAD!”

“PRESENT!” “FIRE!” “RELOAD!”

“SHOULDER — ARMS!”

“SHOULDER — ARMS!”

“PRESENT — ARMS!”

d. *Last Post and Rouse.* Last Post will then be played by the Bugler followed by one minute's silence and then the Rouse. Only the commanders of the Bearer and Firing Parties will remain at the salute during the Rouse. On completion, the Firing Party sergeant will order his party to **“SHOULDER — ARMS!”**.

e. *The Dismiss.* The commanders will then at the appropriate moment turn their parties in the desired direction and march off to be dismissed.

Note. See Funeral Rifle Exercises, Lesson 6 of this Chapter, for Volleys with Blank Cartridges.

Foot Drill at a Funeral with the Rifle

0608. The procedure for the Firing Party for breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time, and Slow Time to Quick Time with the rifle at the Reverse Arms position is as follows:

a. *Quick Time from Slow Time.* The Firing Party commander gives the following words of command: **“PARADE, BREAK INTO QUICK TIME, QUICK — MARCH!”**. Once the executive word of command “MARCH!” has been given on the right foot, on the next left foot the rifle is forced to the horizontal position under control of the right hand, keeping the rifle forced into the right side of the body under control of the right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow. At the same time, the left arm is forced to the rear as far as physically possible and the quick march time continues as normal.

b. *Slow Time from Quick Time.* The Firing Party commander gives the following words of command: **“PARADE, BREAK INTO SLOW TIME, SLOW — MARCH!”**. Once the executive word of command “MARCH!” has been given, the correct movement of break into Slow Time is carried out. As the right foot strikes the ground the rifle, under control of the right hand, is forced back to resume the Reverse Arms position. At the same time, the left hand is forced behind the back of the body to grasp the barrel of the rifle in a full grip thus resuming the correct position of the Reverse Arms. The Slow March then continues as normal with the rifle in the Reverse Arms position.

0609. - 0619. *Reserved.*



Fig 6-9. Prepare to Lift — Lift



Fig 6-10. Lowering the Coffin

PART 2. FUNERAL RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 1. THE REVERSE ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0620. **Aim.** *To teach the Reverse Arms from the Shoulder.*

0621. **Timings.** *One 30 minute period.*

0622. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

0623. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*

0624. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0625. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

0626. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*

0627. **Revision.** *Revise the Shoulder Arms from the High Port if appropriate.*

Introduction

0628. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Reverse Arms from the Shoulder Arms position. This movement is taught so that an individual or body of Riflemen can pay the correct compliment to a fallen comrade during a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Reverse Arms

0629. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, REVERSE — ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Reverse Arms — One

0630. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, REVERSE ARMS — ONE!”, at the same time calling out “ONE”. Explain:* On the command, force the right arm across the body to strike and grasp the rifle in the area of the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.

0631. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist and forearm do not move throughout the execution of the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip in the area of the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “ONE”.

0632. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Shoulder and practice.*

Reverse Arms — Two

0633. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain:* On the command, force the rifle into the vertical position on the right side of the body, changing the grip of the right hand from a full grip to a ‘Y’ like grip. At the same time, release the grip on the butt plate and force the left hand across the body to grasp the stock, then freeze in this position.

0634. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front, on the right side of the body.
- b. The right hand has a ‘Y’ like grip in the area of the small of the butt, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock just above the trigger guard with the back of the hand facing the chest and the left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out “TWO”.

0635. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Reverse Arms — Three

0636. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE”. Explain:* On the command, rotate the rifle in front of the right shoulder, changing the grip of the right hand to a full grip. At the same time, change the grip of the left hand as the rifle rotates to a full grip on top of the stock, so that the back of the hand is facing forward, then freeze in this position.

0637. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body, the barrel is pointing down-wards with the magazine to the rear and the butt plate in line with the right shoulder.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock with the back of the hand facing forward and the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

0638. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice, calling out the time.*

Reverse Arms — Four

0639. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — FOUR!”, at the same time calling out “FOUR”. Explain:* On the command, force the rifle under the armpit under control of the right hand. At the same time, force the left arm behind the body to strike and grasp the barrel of the rifle in a full grip, then freeze in this position.

0640. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is under the armpit at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the magazine in front of the shoulder and the toe of the butt in line with the right shoulder.
- b. The right hand retains its full grip on the small of the butt and the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the barrel, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “FOUR”.

0641. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice, calling out the time.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0642. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement then practice the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

0643. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for measured, precise movements.
 - (2) A look forward to the Shoulder Arms from the Reverse to be taught in the next lesson.

0644. - 0649. *Reserved.*



Squad Two

Fig 6-11a. Reverse Arms



Squad Three
Fig 6-11b. Reverse Arms



Final Position

Fig 6-11c. Reverse Arms

LESSON 2. THE SHOULDER ARMS FROM THE REVERSE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0650. **Aim.** *To teach the Shoulder Arms from the Reverse.*

0651. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

0652. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

0653. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*

0654. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0655. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

0656. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*

0657. **Revision.** *Revise the Reverse Arms from the Shoulder.*

Introduction

0658. **Explain:** *The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Shoulder Arms from the Reverse position on completion of a compliment in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Shoulder Arms

0659. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, SHOULDER — ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.*

Shoulder Arms — One

0660. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SHOULDER ARMS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command, force the rifle into the vertical position in the right side of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time, release the grip with the left hand and force it in front of the body to strike and grasp the stock, then freeze in this position.*

0661. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the butt plate in line with the shoulder, the right hand retains the grip on the rifle with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The left hand has a full grip on the stock with the back of the hand towards the body with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

0662. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Shoulder, then Reverse Arms and practice.*

Shoulder Arms — Two

0663. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, rotate the rifle so that the butt passes close to the body under control of the left hand. At the same time, change the grip with the right hand into a 'Y' like grip in the area of the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.*

0664. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip in the area of the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock just above the trigger guard with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "TWO".

0665. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Shoulder Arms — Three

0666. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, force the rifle across the body on to the left shoulder under control of the right hand, changing the grip from a 'Y' like grip to a full grip. At the same time, release the grip on the stock with the left hand and force it across the body to strike the butt plate, then freeze in this position.*

0667. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is on the left shoulder at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the magazine square to the left.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

0668. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Shoulder Arms — Four

0669. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain: On the command, force the right arm across the body by the shortest route and freeze in this position.*

0670. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The right arm is in the position of Attention whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FOUR".

0671. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0672. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practice the squad, ensuring they call out the time "ONE — TWO THREE — ONE", etc, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

0673. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to strike, seize and grasp the rifle.
 - (2) A look forward to the Change Arms at the Reverse to be taught in the next lesson.

0674. - 0679. *Reserved.*

LESSON 3. THE CHANGE ARMS AT THE REVERSE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0680. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Arms at the Reverse.*
0681. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*
0682. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0683. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
0684. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0685. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
0686. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*
0687. **Revision.** *Revise the Shoulder Arms from the Reverse.*

Introduction

0688. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Change Arms when in the Reverse position, in order to rest a limb or provide a spectacle at a military display, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Change Arms

0689. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, CHANGE — ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Change Arms — One

0690. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle into the vertical position in front of the right shoulder under control of the right hand. At the same time, release the grip with the left hand and force the arm by the shortest route to the position of Attention at the left side, then freeze in this position.

0691. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the butt in line with the right shoulder.
- b. The right hand has a full grip in the area of the small of the butt, the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

0692. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Reverse Arms and practice.*

Change Arms — Two

0693. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, force the rifle across the body under control of the right hand. At the same time, force the left hand up to strike and grasp the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.*

0694. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the butt plate in line with the left shoulder.
- b. The left hand has a full grip in the area of the small of the butt and the elbow is forced well in.
- c. The right hand has a full grip of the small of the butt just below the left hand with the wrist, the forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "TWO".

0695. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Change Arms — Three

0696. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the right hand to strike and grasp the barrel just above the stock in a full grip. At the same time, and under control of the left hand, force the rifle to the rear at an angle of 45 degrees.*

0697. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand has a full grip on the small of the butt and the left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.

- b. The right hand has a full grip on the barrel with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body remains erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

0698. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0699. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement then practice the squad, ensuring they call out the time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Change Arms from the Left to Right Shoulder

06100. *The squad must now be taught how to Change Arms from the Left Shoulder to the Right. This is done by demonstration and explanation.*

Conclusion

06101. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for good timing to strike, seize and grasp the rifle.
 - (2) A look forward to the Lower on Your Arms Reversed, from the Present Arms position, to be taught in the next lesson.

06102. - 06109. *Reserved.*



Squad One



Squad Two

Fig 6-12. Change Arms



Fig 6-13. Change Arms — Final Position

LESSON 4. LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED FROM THE PRESENT ARMS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

06110. **Aim.** *To teach Lower on your Arms Reversed from the Present.*
06111. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*
06112. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
06113. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*
06114. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

06115. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
06116. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*
06117. **Revision.** *Revise the Change Arms at the Reverse.*

Introduction

06118. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the movement Lower on your Arms Reversed, carried out from the Present Arms position. This is taught to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to pay respects to a fallen comrade in a smart, uniform manner, at a military funeral. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Lower on your Arms Reversed

06119. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, LOWER ON YOUR ARMS — REVERSED!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Lower on your Arms — One

06120. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, LOWER ON YOUR ARMS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle upwards in

front of the body under control of the left hand. At the same time, release the grip with the right hand and force it up to strike and grasp the pistol grip. At the same time, bend the right knee in front of the body until the foot is 6-8 inches from the ground and the right foot is hanging naturally below the knee. Then force the foot down by the left and freeze in this position.

06121. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is in the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front and the foresight in line with the eyes.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the pistol grip, the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the exception of the thumb, and the left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- d. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line, front centre of the body.
- e. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "ONE".

06122. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Present Arms and practice.*

Lower on your Arms — Two

06123. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out the time "ONE THOUSAND — TWO THOUSAND — THREE THOUSAND — FOUR THOUSAND — FIVE THOUSAND — SIX THOUSAND". Explain: On the command, rotate the rifle in front of the body and out to the right hand side until it is level with the waist belt, under control of the right hand, extending the right arm to the fullest extent. At the same time, the left hand releases the grip on the stock, the fingers extend, and the hand travels down the left side of the rifle to the butt plate, judging the pause of 'One Thousand' to 'Six Thousand'. Then grasp the butt plate with the left hand and freeze in this position.*

06124. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical in the right side of the body with the barrel pointing downwards and the magazine to the rear.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the right arm at its fullest extent, the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.

- c. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out the time, "ONE THOUSAND — TWO THOUSAND — THREE THOUSAND — FOUR THOUSAND — FIVE THOUSAND — SIX THOUSAND".

06125. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Lower on your Arms — Three

06126. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out the time "ONE THOUSAND — TWO THOUSAND — THREE THOUSAND — FOUR THOUSAND". Explain: On the command, lower the head within the timing and freeze in this position.*

06127. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, both hands, wrists, forearms and elbows do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The head is lowered so that the eyes are looking down onto the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out the time, "ONE THOUSAND — TWO THOUSAND — THREE THOUSAND — FOUR THOUSAND".

06128. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

06129. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practice the squad, ensuring they call out the time "ONE — TWO THREE — ONE THOUSAND — TWO THOUSAND — THREE THOUSAND — FOUR THOUSAND — FIVE THOUSAND — SIX THOUSAND — TWO THREE — ONE THOUSAND — TWO THOUSAND — THREE THOUSAND — FOUR THOU- SAND".*

Conclusion

06130. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for slow, deliberate movement to show respect.
 - (2) A look forward to the Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reverse, to be taught in the next lesson.

06131. - 06139. *Reserved.*



Side View



Front View

Fig 6-14. Lower on Your Arms Reversed — One



Fig 6-15. Lower on Your Arms Reversed — Squad Two — Mid Movement



Squad Three



Final Position

Fig 6-16. Lower on Your Arms Reversed

LESSON 5. THE PRESENT ARMS FROM THE LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

06140. **Aim.** *To teach the Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reversed.*

06141. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

06142. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

06143. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*

06144. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

06145. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

06146. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*

06147. **Revision.** *Revise the Lower on your Arms Reversed movement.*

Introduction

06148. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to adopt the Present Arms position from the position of Lower on your Arms Reversed. This is taught to enable an individual or body of Riflemen to pay the full compliment at a military funeral. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Present Arms

06149. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, PARTY, PRESENT — ARMS!". Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken into numbered parts.*

Party

06150. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS — PARTY!". Explain: On the command, raise the head to the position of Attention and freeze in this position. Do not call out.*

06151. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, right and left arm do not move throughout the movement and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- b. Do not call out.

06152. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Lower on your Arms Reversed and practice.*

Present Arms — One

06153. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, PRESENT ARMS — ONE!”, at the same time calling out “ONE”. Explain:* On the command, rotate the rifle to the front centre of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time, release the grip with the left hand and force it back across the body to strike and grasp the stock. Then freeze in this position.

06154. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is in the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front, the right hand retains its full grip on the pistol grip with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, with the exception of the thumb, just above the trigger guard, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “ONE”.

06155. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Present Arms — Two

06156. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain:* On the command, force the rifle down the front centre of the body under control of the left hand. At the same time, change the grip of the right hand to a ‘Y’ grip in the area of the small of the butt. At the same time, bend the right knee in front of the body until the foot is 6- 8 inches from the ground and the right foot hangs naturally below the knee. Then force the right foot down behind the left foot and freeze in this position.

06157. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is in the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' grip in the area of the small of the butt, and the right arm is at its fullest extent with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock with the exception of the thumb, which is running up the left side of the stock just above the trigger guard, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line down the front centre of the body, with the right instep touching and against the left heel.
- e. Both knees are braced, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "TWO".

06158. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

06159. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practice the squad, ensuring they call out the time "ONE — TWO THREE — ONE" for the second and third movements, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

06160. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for good timing and bearing to imply respect.
 - (2) Include a look forward to the final lesson on Volleys with Blank Cartridges.

06161. - 06169. *Reserved.*



Party



Present Arms - One

Fig 6-17. Present Arms from Lower on Your Arms Reversed

LESSON 6. VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

06170. **Aim.** *To teach how to fire a volley of blank cartridges from the position of the Shoulder and return to the Shoulder.*

06171. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

06172. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

06173. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle.*

06174. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

06175. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

06176. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*

06177. **Revision.** *Revise the Present Arms from the Lower on Your Arms Reversed.*

Introduction

06178. **Explain:** The final stage in Funeral Rifle Exercises is to learn how to fire a volley of blank cartridges and return to the Shoulder Arms position. This is taught to enable a Firing Party at a military funeral to pay this compliment to the deceased.

Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Load

06179. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES — LOAD!”. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Squad One

06180. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES, SQUAD — ONE!”, at the same time calling out “ONE”. Explain:* On the command, force the right arm across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the area of the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.

06181. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand and the rifle do not move throughout this movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow straight and parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

06182. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Shoulder Arms and practice.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Two

06183. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle under control of the right hand across the body to the right shoulder. At the same time, the left hand releases its grip on the butt plate to strike, seize and grasp the stock in a full grip, whilst the right hand changes to a 'Y' like grip. Then freeze in this position.

06184. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical in the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

06185. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Three

06186. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle forward in front of the right shoulder under control of the left hand. At the same time, release the grip with the right hand to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip. Bend the left leg sufficiently to take a 750 mm (30 inches) pace to the front and freeze in this position.

06187. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with both knees braced and the body weight forward over the left leg.
- b. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- c. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which is placed on the trigger guard.
- d. The left hand retains its full grip on the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "THREE".

06188. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Four

06189. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain:* On the command, the right hand is forced by the shortest route to strike the area of the cocking handle with the palm of the hand. Freeze in this position.

06190. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle with the thumb curled around the cocking lever. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FOUR".

06191. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Five

06192. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FIVE!", at the same time calling out "FIVE". Explain:* On the command, the right hand cocks the rifle, ensuring that the working parts are forced fully to the rear, and allowed to come forward. It then resumes its position. Freeze in this position.



Fig 6-18. Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Squad Three



Side View



Front View

Fig 6-19. Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Present

06193. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle, the wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FIVE".

06194. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges — Six

06195. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — SIX!", at the same time calling out "SIX". Explain: On the command, the right hand is forced by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip in a full grip, then freeze in this position.*

06196. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "SIX".

06197. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Present

06198. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "PRESENT!". Explain: On the command, the rifle is forced up until the butt plate is on the right shoulder. At the same time, the index finger moves the safety catch into the 'Fire' position and is then placed inside the trigger guard ready to squeeze the trigger. Freeze in this position.*

06199. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt plate resting on top of the right shoulder.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is curled around the trigger. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.

- c. The left hand, where physically possible, maintains its full grip of the stock.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. The squad will not call out.

06200. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Fire

06201. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “FIRE!”. Explain:* On the command, squeeze the trigger then place the index finger along the trigger guard.

06202. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, right hand, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow maintain their position throughout the movement.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. The squad will not call out.

Reload

06203. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “RELOAD!”. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Reload — One

06204. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — ONE!”, at the same time calling out “ONE”. Explain:* On the command, force the rifle down the right side of the body to adopt the On Guard position on the right hip. Freeze in this position.

06205. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The left hand retains its full grip on the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

- d. Call out “ONE”.

06206. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Reload — Two

06207. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain: On the command, the right hand is forced by the shortest route to strike the area of the cocking handle with the palm of the hand. Freeze in this position.*

06208. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle with the thumb curled around the cocking lever. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out “TWO”.

06209. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Reload — Three

06210. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE”. Explain: On the command, the right hand cocks the rifle ensuring the working parts are forced fully to the rear and allowed to come forward. The hand then resumes its position. Freeze in this position.*

06211. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle with the thumb curled around the lever. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out “THREE”.

06212. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Reload — Four

06213. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain:* On the command, the right hand is forced by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip in a full grip. Freeze in this position.

06214. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FOUR".

06215. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Present — Fire — Reload — Present — Fire

06216. This movement is revised as laid down in paragraphs above.

Unload

06217. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "UNLOAD!". Explain:* For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Unload — One

06218. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, the rifle is forced down to the right hip. Freeze in this position.

06219. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

- d. Call out “ONE”.

06220. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Unload — Two

06221. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain:* On the command, the head and eyes are lowered sufficiently to look at the rifle. At the same time, the left hand is forced by the shortest route to the safety catch and with the thumb, force the safety catch to the ‘Safe’ position. At the same time, with the right hand, rotate the rifle sufficiently so the safety catch is visible. Freeze in this position.

06222. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt in the right hip.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The left hand is in the area of the safety catch with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. With the exception of the head and eyes the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out “TWO”.

06223. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Unload — Three

06224. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE”. Explain:* On the command, the left hand is forced by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the stock in a full grip. At the same time, the head and eyes resume the position of Attention.

06225. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.

- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

06226. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Unload — Four

06227. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain:* On the command, under the control of the left hand, the rifle is forced to a vertical position on the right side of the body. At the same time, the right hand releases its grip of the pistol grip and is forced by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the small of the butt in a 'Y' like grip. At the same time, the left knee is bent sufficiently to allow the left foot to resume the position of Attention. Freeze in this position.

06228. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical in front of the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle just above the trigger guard, the wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- d. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from the front centre of the body. Both knees are braced whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "FOUR".

06229. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Unload — Five

06230. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — FIVE!", at the same time calling out "FIVE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle up and across the body by the shortest route and place it on the left shoulder under control of the right hand. At the same time, change the grip of the right hand to a full grip, whilst the left hand releases its full grip and is forced down on the rifle by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip. Freeze in this position.

06231. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The stock of the rifle is in the left shoulder with the magazine to the left. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground, the left elbow forced well in to the body.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt, with the wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FIVE".

06232. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Unload — Six

06233. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — SIX!", at the same time calling out "SIX". Explain: On the command, force the right arm down by the shortest possible route to resume the correct position of Attention. Freeze in this position.*

06234. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- b. Call out "SIX".

06235. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

06236. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practice the squad, ensuring that they call out the time "ONE — TWO THREE — ONE", etc, at the regulation rate of 40 drill movements to the minute.*

Instructor's Notes

06237. *A total of three rounds is always fired.*

06238. *Emphasize that should the rifle malfunction for any reason the soldier should continue to carry out the drill movements.*

06239. *Blank rounds should be issued for at least one rehearsal.*

Conclusion

06240. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.
- b. Safety precautions.
- c. Summary. To include the following:
 - (1) The need for good timing and bearing to imply respect.
 - (2) State that this lesson completes the series of rifle exercises.

06241. - 06249. *Reserved.*

PART 3. FUNERAL SWORD DRILL

LESSON 1. THE REVERSE SWORDS FROM THE CARRY

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

06250. **Aim.** *To teach the Reverse Swords from the Carry.*

06251. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

06252. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

06253. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

06254. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

06255. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

06256. **Revision.** *Revise Saluting at the Halt then return swords to their scabbards.*

Introduction

06257. **Explain:** The next stage in sword exercises is to learn the Reverse Swords from the Carry. The movement is taught to enable an individual to Reverse Swords when in attendance at a military funeral, when paying respects to a fallen comrade, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.

Reverse Swords from the Carry

06258. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "REVERSE — ARMS!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Emphasize that the movements are carried out working on the third and fourth movements of the rifle drill.

Reverse Arms — One

06259. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, REVERSE ARMS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, twist the right wrist and dropping the point of the sword to the left front then freeze in this position.

06260. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The edge of the sword is uppermost, the hilt on top and in front of the right shoulder.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are together and straight and to the right of the handle, thumb to the left.
- c. The back of the hand to the right and the right elbow against the side, with the sword at an angle of 45 degrees.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "ONE".

06261. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Draw Swords and from the Carry position practice.*

Reverse Arms — Two

06262. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, force the sword under the right armpit, ensuring the right elbow is forced to the side. Seize the blade with the left hand then freeze in this position. Call out the time.*

06263. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand comes from behind the back, in line with the waist belt, the back of the hand underneath.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "TWO".

06264. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice, calling out the time.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

06265. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who should not now call out. Remind the squad that the sword exercise must be accurate and graceful and is carried out on the third and fourth movements of the Reverse Arms with the rifle.*

Conclusion

06266. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for good timing.
 - (2) A look forward to the Carry Swords from the Reverse, to be taught in the next lesson.

06267. - 06269. *Reserved.*



First Position



Second Position

Fig 6-20. Reverse Swords from the Carry

LESSON 2. THE CARRY SWORDS FROM THE REVERSE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

06270. **Aim.** *To teach the Carry Swords from the Reverse.*

06271. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

06272. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

06273. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

06274. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

06275. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood property At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

06276. **Revision.** *Revise the Reverse Swords then return swords to their scabbards.*

Introduction

06277. **Explain:** The next stage in sword exercises is to learn how to Carry Swords from the Reverse. The movement is taught to enable an individual to return to the Carry having paid his respects to a fallen comrade at a military funeral in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Carry Swords

06278. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "CARRY — SWORDS!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Carry Swords — One

06279. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CARRY SWORDS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the left hand and return it to the left side of the body, then freeze in this position.

06280. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand returns to the left side and resumes the correct position of Attention.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "ONE".

06281. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention, Draw Swords and from the Reverse position practice, calling out the time.*

Carry Swords — Two

06282. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, the sword is swung forward and to the left, to resume the correct position of the Carry, then freeze in this position.*

06283. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword is swung forward with a circular movement and kept close to the body.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "TWO".

06284. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice, calling out the time.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

06285. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not call out the time.*

Conclusion

06286. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing if done in conjunction with rifle drill.
 - (2) A look forward to the Change Swords at the Reverse, to be taught in the next lesson.

06287. - 06289. *Reserved.*

LESSON 3. THE CHANGE SWORDS AT THE REVERSE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

06290. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Swords at the Reverse.*

06291. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

06292. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

06293. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

06294. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

06295. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

06296. **Revision.** *Revise the Reverse and Carry Swords then return swords to their scabbards.*

Introduction

06297. **Explain:** The next stage in sword exercises is to learn the Change Swords at the Reverse. The movement is taught to enable an individual to change swords, to rest a limb, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Change Swords

06298. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "CHANGE — ARMS!", as for rifle drill. Explain: For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.*

Change Arms — One

06299. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the cautionary command "CHANGE", change the grip of the right hand by placing it underneath the sword handle. Then on the executive command "ARMS!", the sword is brought to the vertical position and the left hand is forced to the left side of the body, then freeze in this position.*

06300. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand is now in the correct position of Attention on the left side of the body.
- b. The thumb of the right hand is to the left and the basket of the sword is to the front.
- c. The pommel of the handle is in line with the shoulder.
- d. Call out "ONE".

06301. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention, Draw Swords and Reverse Swords, then practice.*

Change Arms — Two

06302. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, the sword is passed across the body into the left hand, then freeze in this position.

06303. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right hand relaxes its position on the handle of the sword.
- b. The thumb of the left hand is to the left, the fingers are curled around the handle, and the basket of the sword is facing the front.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

06304. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Change Arms — Three

06305. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain:* On the command, the sword is rotated inwards and forced under the left armpit. The right hand is forced to the rear to grasp the blade and after a pause, the grip of the left hand is changed by placing it on top of the sword handle.

06306. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The back of the right hand is underneath and the sword is at an angle of 45 degrees.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

- c. Call out “THREE”.

06307. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

06308. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not now call out the timing. Explain: The Change Arms with the sword should be carried out during the same movement with the rifle.*

Conclusion

06309. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for coordination and graceful movement with the rifle movements.
 - (2) A look forward to the Lower on Your Swords Reversed from the Present, to be taught in the next lesson.

06310. - 06319. *Reserved.*



One



Squad Two

Fig 6-21. Change Swords at the Reverse



Fig 6-22. Change Swords at the Reverse — Final Position

LESSON 4. THE LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED FROM THE PRESENT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

06320. **Aim.** *To teach the Lower on Your Swords Reversed from the Present.*

06321. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

06322. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

06323. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

06324. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

06325. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

06326. **Revision.** *Revise the Reverse and Change Swords then return swords to their scabbards.*

Introduction

06327. **Explain:** The next stage in sword exercises is to learn the Lower on Your Swords Reversed from the Present. The movement is taught to enable an individual to pay a compliment to a fallen comrade, at a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Rest on Swords Reversed from the Present

06328. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS — REVERSED!". Explain: The movement is carried out from the Present in time with the rifle movement. For instructional purposes, it is broken down into numbered parts.*

Lower on Your Swords Reversed — One

06329. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command, the sword is brought to the position of the Recover, then freeze in this position.*

06330. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The tip of the sword is uppermost, edge to the left, the hilt is in line with the mouth, fingers round the handle.
- b. The thumb is pointing upwards and the back of the hand to the front.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

06331. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Draw Swords, then Present Arms and practice.*

Lower on Your Swords Reversed — Two

06332. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — TWO!", at the same time calling out the timing "ONE THOUSAND — TWO THOUSAND — THREE THOUSAND — FOUR THOUSAND — FIVE THOUSAND — SIX THOUSAND". Explain: On the command, the point of the sword is allowed to fall forward, and placed in between the feet and in line with the tip of the toes. The grip of the right hand is changed so that it rests on the pommel. The left hand is placed on top of the right on the count of "SIX THOUSAND". Both elbows are kept down.*

06333. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. As the point of the sword is falling forward, the hilt is rotated to the right so that the edge of the sword is to the right.
- b. The movement is carried out over six seconds.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out the time.

06334. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Lower on Your Swords Reversed — Three

06335. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD — THREE!". Explain: On the command, the chin is lowered on to the breast, then freeze in this position.*

06336. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword and elbows do not move.
- b. The chin is lowered on the count of "FOUR THOUSAND".

- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

06337. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

06338. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not now call out the timing. Emphasize: All the movements are carried out with dignity, and the second and third movements must not be hurried.*

Conclusion

06339. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for graceful movement in time with the rifle drill.
 - (2) A look forward to the Present from the Lower on Your Swords Reversed, to be taught in the next lesson.

06340. - 06349. *Reserved.*

LESSON 5. THE PRESENT FROM THE LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

06350. **Aim.** *To teach the Present from the Lower on Your Swords Reversed.*

06351. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

06352. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

06353. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

06354. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

06355. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

06356. **Revision.** *Revise the Lower on Your Swords Reversed then return swords to their scabbards.*

Introduction

06357. **Explain:** The next stage in sword exercises is to learn the Present from Lower on Your Swords Reversed. The movement is taught to enable an individual to return to the Present having paid a compliment to a fallen comrade, at a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Present from Lower on Your Swords Reversed

06358. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "PARTY, PRESENT — ARMS!" as for the rifle movement, with which this sword movement is carried out. Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Party — Present Arms — One

06359. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "PARTY, PRESENT ARMS — ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command "PARTY!", the chin is raised from the chest. On the command

“PRESENT ARMS — ONE!”, the sword is raised to the position of the Recover. At the same time, the left arm resumes its correct position of Attention at the left side of the body, then freeze in this position.

06360. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The tip of the sword is uppermost, the edge to the left and the hilt in line with the mouth.
- b. The fingers are curled around the handle, the thumb pointing upwards.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “ONE”.

06361. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Draw Swords, Present Arms and Lower on Your Swords Reversed then practice.*

Present Arms — Two

06362. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD — TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain:* On the command, the sword is brought from the position of the Recover to the correct position of the Salute, then freeze in this position.

06363. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword is now in the correct position of the Salute.
- b. The edge of the sword is to the left, the point 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground, and in front of the right shoulder.
- c. The thumb is flat on the side of the handle. The hilt is behind and touching the right thigh.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out “TWO”.

06364. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

06365. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not now call out the timing. Emphasize:* The vital need for accuracy and grace with this movement and that if at a funeral, the word of command **“ARMS”** may be used instead of **“SWORDS”**.

Conclusion

06366. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for coordination with the rifle movements.
 - (2) This lesson concludes the Sword Drill exercises.

Handling Instructions: For MOD Use Only

Figs 6-23. - 6-25. Reserved

CHAPTER 7

DRILL FOR BUGLE MAJORS AND BUGLE PLATOONS

FORWARD

0701. The details in this Chapter are intended to standardise Drill to be carried out by all Buglers and Bugle Platoons across The RIFLES Regiment. On accessions where Bugle Platoons or individual Buglers are parading alongside other Bands or Corps of Drums, an amicable agreement is to be sought, taking in to account history and traditions Buglers, whether in Battalion Bugle Platoons or attached to the Band and Bugles, are the face of The RIFLES and as are much a part of the Corporate Image of the RIFLES as the Bugle Horn. The Buglers are usually the first members of the Regiment or Battalion, visitors see and meet, and therefore it is imperative the Riflemen selected to perform in this duty are, well turned out, confident and perform personal drill to the highest of standard.

BUGLE DRILL

LESSON 1. POSITIONS AT THE HALT AND ON THE MARCH

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0702. **Aim.** *To teach Bugle Drill.*
0703. **Timings.** *One 45 minute period.*
0704. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0705. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Bugle.*
0706. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0707. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

0708. The purpose of this lesson is to instruct the novice Bugler in the correct positions of holding the Bugle at the Halt and on the march, while playing and whilst not playing, in a smart and soldier like manner. This will enable the Bugler to carry out his duties correctly while on parade and in front of an ordinance. At the end of the lesson the Bugler will be able to; stand easy, stand at ease, stand to attention, rest the Bugle and march with a Bugle both in slow and quick time.

Positions at the Halt

0709. **Stand Easy.** The Bugler is to be stood at ease as previously taught with the Bugle held in the right hand, at the point of balance, mouth piece forward and bell to the rear. Both arms are to run straight down the side of the body.



Fig 7-1. Stand Easy

0710. **Stand at Ease.** On the word of command “Stand Ready”, The Bugler is to brace up as previously taught, the left arm is not moved and the right arm is to be forced out and to the side of the body at an angle of approximately 30 degrees, as this is done, the Bugle is rotated forward so the lower tubing is forward, with the mouth piece pointing towards the ground and the bell towards the body, touching the inner arm. The right index finger is to pointing down and along the tuning slide.



Fig 7-2. Stand at Ease

0711. **Position of "Attention".** When ordered to the position of Attention The Bugler stands to Attention as taught. The Bugle is moved from the right side of the body to a position on the right hip, the Bugle is to be parallel to the ground, mouth piece pointing forward, lower tubing of the Bugle uppermost, with the bell approximately two inches away from the body. The index finger should move from pointing along the tuning slide to grasping the Bugle, the thumb running forward and along the tubing.



Fig 7-3. Position of Attention

0712. **Rest Position.** The Rest Position can be used to rest the Bugle when there is a prolonged period of inactivity, such as waiting for a VIP to arrive or when the Band are playing a piece of music without Bugle parts. It is a position that is initiated from the position of attention, by the senior Bugler initiating the movement. As the senior Bugler starts to adopt the position the remainder move to complete the movement to his time. From the position of attention the Bugle is moved slowly and gracefully to a central position in front of the body, and rotated 90 degrees anti clockwise, approximately four to six inches away from the body, at the same time, the left hand meets the Bugle and grasps the mouth piece and Tuning Slide in an over hand grip, bringing the Bugle to rest against the Body at arm's length. From this position, the Buglers may be stood at ease and stood easy, in this instance it is only the feet that are moved, the hands remaining in the rest position. Moving from the rest position back to the position of attention the Bugler reacts as previously taught.



Fig 7-4. Rest Position

0713. ***The Ready or Playing Position.*** On the Signal from the Bugle Major, The Bugler is to move the Bugle from the hip to the playing position by the shortest possible way. The mouth piece is to rest on the lips, the bugle is to be horizontal to the ground and at a right angle to the Body. The Bugle should not be twisted or pointing in any other direction but forward! The position of the right arm should be bent at the elbow at approximately 45 degrees with the elbow at the height of the shoulder.



Fig 7-5. Ready or Playing Position

Positions on the March

0714. ***Marching without Playing.*** When marching without play, in Quick Time the Bugle is held on the hip as described in the Position of Attention. Care is to be taken to ensure the Bugle doesn't touch the body and remain, approximately two inches away, the left arm swinging as normal. In Slow time, the Bugle is held on the hip with the left arm tucked in to the left hand side of the body throughout.

0715. ***Marching while Playing.*** In Quick time, the Bugle is held in the Playing position as previously taught, the left arm is to continue swinging at waste belt height. In Slow Time the Bugle is held in the Playing position as previously taught, the left arm is tucked in to the left hand side of the body throughout.

Conclusion

0716. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include all Bugle drill movements taught in this lesson and look forward to Tipping and Flourishing.*

0717. - 0719. *Reserved.*

LESSON 2. TIPPING AND FLOURISHING

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0720. **Aim.** *To teach Tipping and Flourishing.*
0721. **Timings.** *One 45 minute period.*
0722. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0723. **Dress and Stores.** *No 2. Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Bugle.*
0724. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0725. **Squad Formations.** *The Squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

0726. The purpose of this lesson is to instruct the novice Bugler how to tip and flourish on the march, in a smart and soldier like manner. This will enable the Bugler to clear the Bugle of water and spit and bring the Bugle to the playing position while on the march. At the end of the lesson the Bugler will be able to tip and flourish in order to bring the Bugle up to the playing position, both in slow and quick time.

Tipping or Flourishing

0727. **Explain.** Tipping or Flourishing is the process of moving the Bugle from the Hip to the playing position while playing and marching in Quick Time. Its purpose is to remove water or spit from the Bugle to improve sound, and to add style and panache to an otherwise dull movement.

0728. **Quick Time.**

- a. On the appropriate right foot, which is dictated by the march, the Bugler is to over emphasise the swing and bring the arm up to shoulder height, on the next left foot, the left arm is checked in to the side of the body, a check pace with the right foot is taken.
- b. On the next left the Bugle is "bounced" on the hip forward and up.
- c. On the following right foot the Bugle is flicked out to the right as in the position of at ease.

d. On the next left foot the Bugle is moved across the body and bounced on to the right hip, mouth piece forward, tubing uppermost, bell towards the body.

e. On the following right foot the Bugle is returned to the position of attention on the march and brought to the playing position on the last left foot, at the same time the left arm is swung to the rear and is continued to be swung at waist belt height. The movement is carried out over seven paces from the first check of the arm on the first left foot, to the last left foot as the Bugle comes up.



Fig 7-6. Tipping and Flourishing - 1st and 2nd Positions



Fig 7-6. Tipping and Flourishing - 3rd and 4th Positions



Fig 7-6. Tipping and Flourishing - 5th and 6th Positions

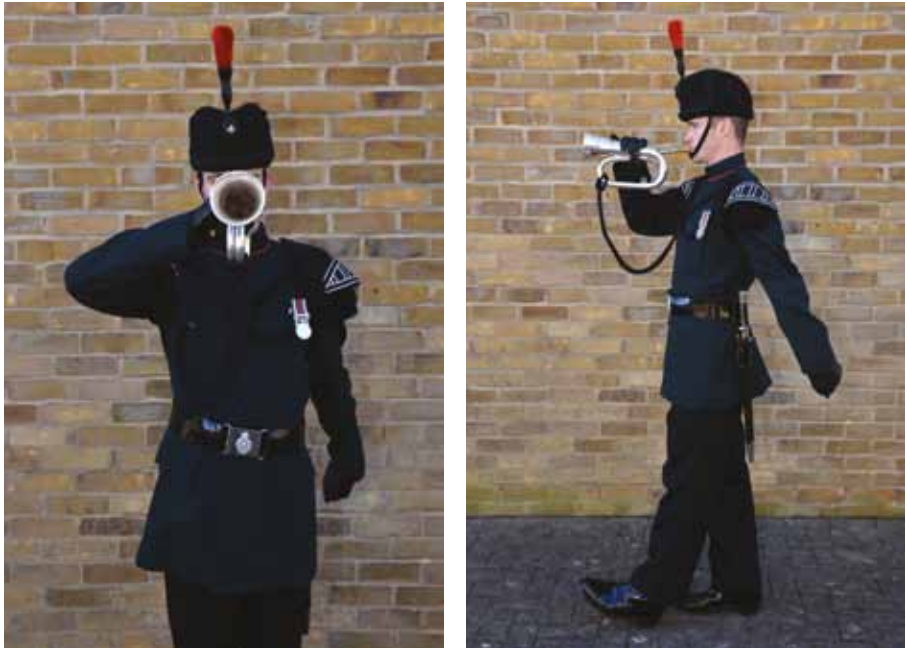


Fig 7-6. Tipping and Flourishing - 7th Position

0729. **Slow Time.** In contradiction to quick Time, the process of Tipping in Slow Time as previously mentioned would look clumsy, is difficult to synchronise without the pre check of the left arm and is something that has not been taught or practiced by any of our antecedent regiments. To that end in Slow Time the Bugle comes up on the second preparatory beat as taught and remains there until the end of a phrase of music. On the first convenient left foot the bugle is brought straight down. On a pre arranged point in the music, the Bugle is returned to the playing position by coming straight up with no tipping, on a convenient left foot.

Conclusion

0730. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include all Bugle drill movements taught in this lesson and look forward to Saluting.*

0731. - 0739. *Reserved.*

LESSON 3. SALUTING

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0740. **Aim.** To teach saluting at the halt and on the march.

0741. **Timings.** One 45 minute period.

0742. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

0743. **Dress and Stores.** No 2. Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Bugle.

0744. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0745. **Squad Formations.** The Squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

0746. The purpose of this lesson is to instruct the novice Bugler how to pay complements to commissioned officers at the halt or on the march, in a smart and soldier like manner, enabling the Bugler to carry out his duties correctly. At the end of the lesson the Bugler will be able to; salute at the halt and on the march.

Saluting at the Halt

0747. From the position of attention, the Bugle is moved across the body by the shortest possible rout, the mouth piece is to rest in the crock of the left elbow, the Bugle parallel to the ground and running along the inside of the forearm. The left hand, grasping the underside of the bell with the piping of the Bugle towards the body. The right hand is then cut away to the right side of the body and the salute taken as previously taught.



Fig 7-7. Officer on Parade

Saluting on the March

0748. On the appropriate right foot the Bugler is to over emphasise the swing and bring the arm up to shoulder height, on the next left foot, the left arm is checked in to the side of the body, a check pace with the right foot is taken.

0749. On the next left the Bugle is moved across the body by the shortest possible rout, the mouth piece is to rest in the crock of the left elbow, the Bugle parallel to the ground and running along the inside of the forearm. The left hand, grasping the underside of the bell with the piping of the Bugle towards the body, a check pace with the right foot is taken.

0750. On the following left foot, the right hand is then cut away to the right side of the body, a check pace with the right foot is taken.

0751. On the following left foot the salute is taken as previously taught, towards either the left or right as appropriate, for a count of five paces.

0752. On the next left foot, the right arm is cut away to the right side of the body, a check pace with the right foot is taken.

0753. On the next left foot, the right hand is moved across the body by the shortest possible rout, and grasps the Bugle, a check pace with the right foot is taken.

0754. On the next left foot the Bugle is returned to the hip and a check pace with the right foot is taken.

0755. On the last left foot the left arm is swung to the rear and Bugler continues to march as taught.

Falling out, Officer on Parade

0756. On the command “**Officer on parade, Fall Out**” the Bugler is to come to the position of attention, if not already. He is then to turn to the right and salute as taught at the halt.

Conclusion

0757. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include all Bugle drill movements taught in this lesson and look forward to marching at the double.*

0758. - 0769. *Reserved.*

LESSON 4. MARCHING AT THE DOUBLE AND AT EASE IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0770. **Aim.** To teach the position and hold of the Bugle at the double and at the position of at ease, in quick time
0771. **Timings.** One 45 minute period.
0772. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0773. **Dress and Stores.** No 2. Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Bugle.
0774. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0775. **Squad Formations.** The Squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

0776. The purpose of this lesson is to instruct the novice Bugler how to double correctly with the Bugle and march in quick time at ease, in a smart and soldier like manner, enabling the Bugler to perform his duties correctly and double on retreat parades and battalion musters. At the end of the lesson the Bugler will be able to; hold the Bugle in the correct position at the double and marching at ease in quick time.

Doubling

0777. From the position of attention, the bugler is to react to the second set of four pace roles by bringing the Bugle from the hip to a position under the right arm pit and twisting the Bugle 90 degrees clockwise. Mouthpieces to the front. On the first beat of the third set of four pace roles the Bugler is to double as previously taught.



Fig 7-8. Marching in Double Time

0778. To halt, the Bugler halts as taught on the word of command or on the musical cut off, the Bugle is returned to the position of attention on the hip as the right foot hits the ground for the last time.

Marching at Ease

0779. At times it is permissible for an individual Bugler to march from A to B at ease, such as the Duty Bugler between playing locations or as an NCO marching a squad. To do this the Bugler adopts the same position with the Bugle as if doubling however continues to march in quick time swinging the left arm waste belt high as usual.

Conclusion

0780. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include all Bugle drill movements taught in this lesson and look forward to practising all drill movements to date.*

0781. - 0789. *Reserved.*

LESSON 5. BUGLE MAJORS DRILL

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0790. **Aim.** To teach Bugle Majors their position on parade and how the Bugle platoon forms up for parade.

0791. **Timings.** One 45 minute period.

0792. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

0793. **Dress and Stores.** No 2. Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Cane. Demo troops can be used if there are an insufficient number of students to form two ranks.

0794. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0795. **Squad Formations.** The Squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

0796. The purpose of this lesson is to instruct Bugle Majors how to form up in front of a Platoon of Buglers, enabling the Bugle Major to direct the platoon on retreat parades and battalion musters. At the end of the lesson the Bugler Major will be able to form up a Bugle Platoon correctly and take his place at the front.

Position and Dressing

0797. The Bugle Major is to be four paces in front and centre of the front rank of Buglers, weather parading as an independent platoon or in front of the Band and Bugles.

0798. The front rank of Buglers is to form up two paces apart, subsequent ranks are to fall in two paces to the rear, covering off with the Bugler in front.

0799. Dressing is to be taken from the Bugle Major and subsequently from the centre Bugler of each rank, if the number of files is even, a senior bugler from one of the middle two files is to be nominated for the rest of the ranks to take the dressing.

07100. When Parading with the RIFLES Band, the Bugle Major will fall in, the Buglers will fall in behind the Bugle Major and the Band are to cover off behind the rear rank of Buglers, under the direction of the Band Sergeant Major or Band Senior, according to instrumentation.

Conclusion

07101. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include all Bugle drill movements taught in this lesson and look forward to practising all drill movements to date.*

07102. - 07109. *Reserved.*

LESSON 6. BUGLE MAJORS CANE DRILL

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0790. **Aim.** To teach Bugle Majors how to direct a Bugle Platoon on parade and how to issue commands with the Cane.

0791. **Timings.** Two 45 minute period.

0792. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

0793. **Dress and Stores.** No 2. Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Cane. Demo troops can be used if there are an insufficient number of students to form two ranks.

0794. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0795. **Squad Formations.** The Squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

0796. The purpose of this lesson is to instruct Bugle Majors on how to issue commands with the cane, enabling the Bugle Major to direct the platoon on retreat parades and battalion musters. At the end of the lesson the Bugler Major will be able to; adopt the positions of stood easy, stood at ease and attention and be able to wheel, mark time and halt the Platoon as well as cut off music and salute.

0797. **Explain:**

a. The Bugle Majors Cane is not only a symbol of his appointment to be carried in all forms of dress, but is also a practical tool for the direction of the Band and Bugles and as a device for signalling orders.

b. The Bugle Major, in his position at the forefront of the Bugle Platoon or Band and Bugles, is the figure who stands out in the public eye. His style and panache enhances the performance and adds much to the spectacle of a military parade.

c. His personal turnout, bearing and drill reflect the standard of the Bugle platoon and the RIFLES as a whole and it goes without saying, the handling of his cane, in coordinating the playing and movements of a parade should be of the highest standard.

Cane Drill at the Halt

0798. **Stand Easy.** The Bugle Major is to be stood properly at ease, as previously taught, with the ferrule resting on the floor at a mid-point between the feet. The head of the cane is held in the palm of the right hand, with the left hand covering the right, fingers pointing straight and down, with the cane central to the body and perpendicular to the floor. If a sword is being worn, it is to hang down with the tip of the scabbard on the floor with the handle pointing forward basket outermost.



Fig 7-9. Stand Easy

0799. **Stand at Ease.** From the position of stood easy, the cane is to move from the central position to the right hand side in a slow and graceful movement. The ferrule is to rest approximately 1 inch from the toe of the right boot. At the same time the left arm is to be moved to the left side of the body forming a fist, with the right arm straight and forced forward. Once this movement has been completed and if a sword is worn, the left hand is to move down to grasp the sword scabbard between the two loops, and rotated to the rear 90 degrees, scabbard pointing forward and down, the handle to the rear basket outermost.



Fig 7-10. Stand at Ease

07100. **Position of Attention.** From the position of at ease, the left foot is raised 6 inches from the ground and driven in to the ground next to the right foot as previously been taught.



Fig 7-11. Position of Attention

07101. **Saluting.** From the Position of Attention the cane is moved to the Check position. The right hand grasps the head of the cane and rotates the wrist and cane to the left and forward with the cane resting in a 45 degree angle from the floor, with the ferrule pointing forward and down, the cane is to be parallel to the sword, if carried. From the Check position the cane is moved across the body and under the left arm, clamping the cane to the side of the body with the left arm whilst still holding the sword. The right arm is to be cut away to the right side of the body and then salute as previously taught. On completion of the salute, return to the position of Attention using the same movements in reverse.



Fig 7-12. Saluting



Fig 7-12. Saluting - 1st and 3rd Positions

Cane Drill on the March

07102. *Explain.* The Cane is to be carried by the Bugle Major routinely as a symbol of his appointment, as well as when on parade. The cane is normally carried in the trail when walking from A to B, or if in front of the Band and Bugles and they aren't playing. If while on parade, the Band and Bugles are playing, the state walk should be employed. This does not however forbid the Bugle Major from practicing his state walk when out and about. The cane is to be spun and dipped when marching in Slow Time, however this is only carried out when marching in front of the Band and Bugles.

07103. ***Steeping Off at the Trail.*** The ferrule of the cane is swung forward as the left foot goes forward, at the same time the right hand, releases the head of the cane and is moved smartly along the cane to the point of balance and held between the thumb and first two fingers of the right hand. Both arms are held to the side of the body for the next pace (right) and arm swinging commences on the next left foot. The cane is swung straight from front to rear and is kept horizontal throughout the swing.



Fig 7-13. Steeping Off at the Trail - 1st Position



Fig 7-13. Steeping Off at the Trail - 2nd and 3rd Positions

07104. **Steeping off in Quick Time, State Walk.** From the position of Attention the cane is moved to the Check, if the band is playing this is done on the second set of three pace rolls, on the first left foot, the ferrule of the cane is placed on the ground and over the course of taking the first left pace the head of the cane is rotated in a figure of eight. As the right foot strikes the ground, the cane is swung forward and over the course of the next left the cane is brought up to a horizontal position, at waist height, the movement is repeated as the next left foot strikes the ground and continued as necessary, the whole movement is carried out over four paces. On occasions of prolonged marching, such as exercising the freedom of a town or city, moving to the Check and transferring to the trail as taught and back to the State Walk is advised to prevent fatigue.



Fig 7-14. Steeping Off in Quick Time, State Walk - 1st and 2nd Positions



Fig 7-14. Steeping Off in Quick Time, State Walk - 3rd and 4th Positions



Fig 7-14. Steeping Off in Quick Time, State Walk - 5th and 6th Positions



Fig 7-14. Steeping Off in Quick Time, State Walk - 7th Position

07105. **Stepping off in Slow Time.** This is a movement only carried out whilst the Band and Bugles are playing. As such the Bass Drummer will play four preparatory beats, on the second beat the cane is moved from the position of "Attention" to the Check and remains in this position for the third and fourth preparatory beats. On the fifth beat, or the first note of the march the Bugle Major is to steep of in slow time as taught, at the same time, the cane is dipped to the ground approximately four to six inches and as the right foot moves forward in slow time the cane is rotated back and around 360 degrees to a horizontal position, waste high. The movement is repeated as the left foot strikes the ground as necessary.



Fig 7-15. Stepping off in Slow Time - 1st and 2nd Positions



Fig 7-15. Stepping off in Slow Time - 3rd and 4th Positions



Fig 7-15. Stepping off in Slow Time - 5th and 6th Positions



Fig 7-15. Stepping off in Slow Time - 7th and 8th Positions

07106. **Saluting on the March.** Saluting on the march is as taught at the halt, with each movement being carried out as the left foot strikes the ground. The salute is to be held for five paces or until the Band and Bugles have marched past the Saluting base, the cane is recovered and the march continued as taught. If the Director of Music (DoM) is marching behind the Bugle Major, it may be necessary to do a preparatory "Dip" from the Check position, to enable the DoM to synchronise his/her Baton Drill.



Fig 7-16. Saluting on the March - 1st and 2nd Positions

Signals

07107. **Right Wheel.** To wheel to the right, the Cane is checked on a convenient left foot, on the next left foot, the Cane is rotated anti-clockwise at arm's length and held horizontally across the body with the ferrule pointing to the left, on the following left the Cane is extended in a graceful semi-circular movement at shoulder height to the right indicating the start of the wheel, with the head and eyes following to look over the right shoulder. When the wheel is complete, the Cane is returned to the Check, and the head and eyes return forward facing.



Fig 7-17. Right Wheel - 1st Position



Fig 7-17. Right Wheel - 2nd Position

07108. **Left Wheel.** To wheel to the left, the Cane is checked on a convenient left foot, on the next left foot, the Cane is rotated anti-clockwise at arm's length and held horizontally across the body with the ferrule pointing to the right, on the following left the Cane is extended in a graceful semi-circular movement at Shoulder height to the left indicating the start of the wheel, with the head and eyes following to look over the left shoulder. When the wheel is complete, the Cane is returned to the Check, and the head and eyes return forward facing.



Fig 7-18. Left Wheel - 1st Position



Fig 7-18. Left Wheel - 2nd Position

07109. **Counter March.** To Counter March, the Cane is checked on a convenient left foot, on the next left foot, the Cane is rotated backwards one and a half full turn, so the Cane is in the right shoulder, ferrule pointing to the sky, tucked in to the right side of the body. On the next left the counter march is initiated to the right over four small steps. The Cane is to remain in the shoulder until the Bugle Major has passed though the last rank of the Band and Bugles. Once though the Cane is to be returned to the Check position and continue as before.



Fig 7-19. Counter March

07110. **Mark Time.** To signal the command Mark time, the Cane is checked on a convenient left foot, on the next left foot, the Cane is rotated backwards one and a half full turn and held above the head, at arm's length, perpendicular to the ground, ferrule pointing to the sky. At a point the Mark Time is required the Cane is dipped backwards 45 degrees on the right foot and returned to a perpendicular position on the following left foot, signalling the preparatory word of command "**MARK**". On the next right foot, the Cane is dipped backwards 45 degrees again and on the following left foot brought forward and returned to the Check position, signalling the executive word of command "**TIME**". The Band and Bugles will then take a check pace on the following right foot and commence marking time.



Fig 7-20. Mark Time - 1st Position



Fig 7-20. Mark Time - 2nd and 3rd Positions



Fig 7-20. Mark Time - 3rd and 4th Positions



Fig 7-20. Mark Time - 5th and 6th Positions

07111. **Halt.** To Halt is only carried out after a Mark Time, this is to prevent confusion with the signal to **Execute Command** and gives the Band and Bugles an opportunity to dress off. The Cane is checked on a convenient left foot, on the next left foot, the Cane is rotated backwards one and a half full turn and held above the head, at arm's length, perpendicular to the ground, ferrule pointing to the sky, signalling the preparatory word of command "**SQUAD**". At a point the Halt is required the Cane is dipped backwards 45 degrees on the right foot and on the following left foot brought forward and returned to the Check position, signalling the executive word of command "**HALT**". The Band and Bugles will then halt as taught.



Fig 7-21. Halt - 1st Position



Fig 7-21. Halt - 2nd and 3rd Positions



Fig 7-21. Halt - 4th and 5th Positions

07112. **Cut-Off.** To signal the Band and Bugles to stop playing, the Cane is checked on a convenient left foot, on the next left foot, the Cane is rotated backwards one and a half full turn and held above the head, at arm's length, perpendicular to the ground, ferrule pointing to the sky. On the next left foot, the right arm is held out to the right at an angle of approximately 45 degrees from the body, while remaining to hold the head of the Cane with the ferrule of the Cane above the head. At the appropriate point in the music the Cane is dipped to signal the Cut – off to the Bass Drummer, as the music Cuts-Off, bring the head of the Cane to the face, with the ferrule still above the head. The Cane is then returned to the Check position, if the Band and Bugles is to start a new march, this is to happen on the second set of the three pace roll. If the Band and Bugles are to remain silent, then all instruments are to come down from the playing position to the carry.



Fig 7-22. Cut-Off - 1st Position



Fig 7-22. Cut-Off - 2nd Position



Fig 7-22. Cut-Off - 3rd Position

07113. **Execute Command.** The signal to Execute Command is used to signal a previously practiced drill move for a display, such as Minstrel Turn or Bomb Burst. The Cane is checked on a convenient left foot, on the next left foot, the Cane is rotated backwards one and a half full turn and held above the head, at arm's length, perpendicular to the ground, ferrule pointing to the sky, signalling the preparatory word of command "**STAND BY**". At a point the move is required, the Cane is dipped backwards 45 degrees on the right foot and on the following left foot brought forward and returned to the Check position, signalling the executive work of command "**EXECUTE**". The Band and Bugles will then carry out the movement as taught. It should not be confused with the signal to Halt, which is only given after a Mark Time.

Conclusion

07114. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include all Bugle drill movements taught in this lesson and look forward to practising all drill movements to date.*

Handling Instructions: For MOD Use Only